

THE SECRET ^{283 a 9}
HISTORY

OF

PERSIA. ^K

CONTAINING

A particular Account, not only of that
KINGDOM, but also of the most Con-
siderable STATES of ASIA;

WITH

The CHARACTERS of their PRINCES, and
other Persons distinguished by their Birth,
Rank, Qualities or Employments.

Translated from the FRENCH ORIGINAL.

With a KEY,

And some EXPLANATORY NOTES.

— *Vitiis Nemo sine nascitur, optimus ille*
Qui minimis urgetur. HORAT.



LONDON:

Printed for M. COOPER, in Pater-noster-Row.

M DCC XLV.

9999

THE SECRET

4

HISTORY



20

PER 21

H

A p
K
fic

The
oth
Ra

Tra

Al

Qu

inte

THE SECRET ^{283a9}
HISTORY
OF

PERSIA. ^K

CONTAINING

A particular Account, not only of that
KINGDOM, but also of the most Con-
siderable STATES of ASIA;

WITH

The CHARACTERS of their PRINCES, and
other Persons distinguished by their Birth,
Rank, Qualities or Employments.

Translated from the FRENCH ORIGINAL.

With a KEY,
And some EXPLANATORY NOTES.

— *Vitiis Nemo sine nascitur, optimus ille
Qui minimis urgetur.* HORAT.



LONDON:

Printed for M. COOPER, in Pater-noster-Row.

M DCC XLV.



A

7

but
genc
so
few
fore
My
I sh
fwer
face
be

T H E
A U T H O R ' s
Advertisement.

*T*O attempt prepossessing the Reader in Favour of these Memoirs, would be questioning his Penetration. There are but too many Works, for which the Indulgence of the Publick is requested, and with so much the more Reason, as there are but few that deserve it. This History is therefore left to the Judgment of the Reader. My End being only to divert and please him, I shall think myself happy, if the Success answers my Desire. The Design of this Preface is no other than to give an Account how the Manuscript fell into my Hands.

Some Years ago an intimate Friend of mine, who is an Englishman by Birth, wishing to have some Knowledge of the Kingdom of Persia, set out for Ispahan. A pretty long Stay he made in that City, which rendered the Persian Language as familiar to him as his own Tongue, and especially an uncommon Politeness, won him at Court several Friends of the highest Rank. Of that Number was Ali-Kouli-Kan, First Secretary of State, and a Lord of distinguished Merit. He had in his Library several Manuscripts of Secret History written in the Persian Tongue. He left them at the Disposal of the English Gentleman, who translated Part of those that related to the Reign of Cha-Abas the first of that Name.

At his Return into England he communicated his Work to me; and the Pleasure I took in the reading of it made me presume, that the Publick would not be displeased with having a more particular Account of a Court, which has been hitherto pretty much unknown in Europe.

I therefore translated those Memoirs into French, with my Friend's Consent. I dare not flatter myself, that I have reached the Elegance and Delicacy of the English Original;

so that if the Reader be not satisfied, he ought to lay the Blame only upon me. I desire however that it be considered, how much the Genius of the English Tongue differs from the French. The latter is more perspicuous, more regular, but neither so nervous nor so rich as the former, the whole Strength of which I have more than once found it impossible for me to express.

Besides what relates to Persia, the Reader will meet with several Passages in this History, so much the more worthy his Curiosity, as they contain many Particulars concerning the general Affairs of Asia, which it is absolutely necessary to know.

N.B. The KEY inserted in the Notes is taken from one printed privately in Holland, and sent us with the Original.

T H E

(v)

H

A

T

with
died c
out a
unat
youn
by a j
he la
and H
in a v
As he
ende
even
are
opli
an
d t
op

a I
rand

THE SECRET
HISTORY
OF
PERSIA.

THE Reign of *Cha-Abas I.*^a, who was justly Surnamed the Great, has been one of the most glorious that are to be met with in the History of *Persia*^b. That Prince died extremely old, and left no other Successor but a Grand-son^c, still a Child, and the unfortunate Remains of a numerous Family. This young Prince, whose Name was *Cha-Sophi*^d, had by a particular Protection from Heaven, escaped the lamentable Fate of his Father, his Brother and his Uncles, whom Death had snatch'd away in a very short Time in the Bloom of their Age. As he was of a weak Constitution, he was pretty tenderly educated by Women, till he came to be seven Years old, when he was committed to the Care of Men. But both these and the former applied themselves rather to improve his Health, than to instruct him in the Art of Government, and to form his Mind; for as he was the only Hope and Support of a great Empire, they judged

^a Lewis XIV. ^b France.
Grand-son. ^d Lewis XV.

^c It should be Great-

judged these Reasons sufficient to spare him the Trouble of studying Politicks, and the Disgust always attending so dry a Study.

Cha-Abas had before his Death taken the Precaution to regulate by his last Will, after what Manner he would have the State governed during his Grand-son's Minority. He excluded from the Administration his Nephew *Ali-Homajou*^c, a Prince of a superior Genius, and adorned with all the proper Qualifications for the Government of a large Empire; and he committed the Care of it to Prince *Soliman*^f, one of his Sons, born of a Slave, whom he had most tenderly loved. This Prince was indeed worthy of the Trust reposed in him by his Father; and both on account of his Genius, and his Knowledge, he was but little inferior to *Ali-Homajou*: And yet we may safely say, that a blind paternal Love and an ancient Hatred, which *Cha-Abas* had conceived against his Nephew on a pretty slight Occasion, had shut that Monarch's Eyes upon the Claims of Nature and of Blood. Thus *Cha-Abas* pretended to make that absolute Authority still reign after his Death, to which nothing could resist during his Life-time. But how much are Men mistaken! The same Instant put an End both to *Cha-Abas*, and to his Authority: His last Will was cancelled: And suppose that *Ali-Homajou*'s Ambition had no Share in this great Event, yet the Success of it was owing to his deep Policy and Ability. This historical Fact is interesting enough to deserve a particular Account.

The Authority of the *Sophis*^g has no Bounds; they have an unlimited Power over their Subjects

^c The Duke of Orleans.

^e French Kings.

^f The Duke of Maine.

^h 7 The

jects Properties and Lives; no Sovereign in the World is so absolutely and so quickly obey'd as they are. But in the Case of a Minority, the deceased Monarch's Will must be owned and admitted by the Princes, by the Grandees of the Kingdom, by the *Divan-Beghi*^h, who is at the Head of the Court of Justice, and by those who with him compose that venerable Bodyⁱ. All these therefore meet in the Presence of the young *Sophi*; the Deceased's last Will is read aloud before them all, they examine it, they weigh every Part of it; and in that Assembly, which represents the whole Nation, the Will is either admitted or cancelled. Such is the Constitution of the State. *Ali-Homajou*^k, who was not ignorant of this, and who, as first Prince of the Blood, was to make the greatest Figure in that Assembly, did not neglect his Interest. He laboured either by himself, or by his Favourites, to win the most powerful Lords, and those Members of the Court of Justice, who had the greatest Credit. Promises, Threatnings, Presents, strong Arguments, nothing was spared, in order to gain the Suffrages of some, and to intimidate the rest. Every thing succeeded to the Prince's Wishes; the Day of that Ceremony proved to him a Day of Triumph. As he possessed the Art of Speaking in the highest degree, he delivered a most eloquent Discourse, which ran only upon the Right, his Birth gave him, to the Regency of the Kingdom, a Right, which he proved the late *Sophy* neither ought nor could transmit unto others to his Prejudice; and, as a skilful Orator, touching but slightly upon his

B 2

own

^h The High-Chancellor. ⁱ The Parliament of Paris.

^k The Duke of Orleans.

own personal Qualifications, he left it to the Assembly to judge of the Merit and Capacity of the two Competitors. All the Suffrages ran in his Favour; the last Will of *Cha-Abas* was declared void, and *Ali-Homajou* was unanimously appointed Guardian to young *Cha-Sephi*, and Regent of the Kingdom.

This Act both of Policy and Authority, was followed by several Establishments of Councils, and by Promotions, in which *Ali-Homajou's* Creatures, and those who had no Power to oppose him, had the greatest Share. Prince *Soliman*¹, and his Followers, with all those who were obnoxious to the new Regent, were sent into Banishment. It was certainly an Advantage to the Kingdom, that Things took such a Turn. By this Means all Subjects of Jealousy and Diffentions (most dangerous Evils under a Minority) were removed. Every one submitted with so much the less Reluctancy, as the supreme Authority was now lodged with a Prince, whose lawful Claim to it was universally acknowledged, and who was known to be capable to govern well.

Ali-Homajou's first Care was to cause to be laid before him an Account of the State of the Finances, which he found in the utmost Confusion. *Cha-Abas* had exhausted all his Treasures to carry on long and expensive Wars: He had contracted immense Debts with the *Armenians*^m both Inhabitants of the Kingdom and Foreigners, who had advanced him considerable Funds for the Support of his numerous Armies. Those Debts were to be paid, and the Kingdom was by no means in a Condition to discharge them. The Governors of the Provinces, who had been

at

¹ *The Duke of Maine.* ^m *Bankers and Merchants.*

at all Times used to send to the Kings of *Persia* considerable Presents, especially of Gold Coin called *Rupies*ⁿ, could no longer draw any Money from their Governments. The Country was desert, the Lands lay uncultivated, Trade languished, Trust and Credit were intirely lost; in a word, the Kingdom was in the most violent Crisis. Yet as the State enjoyed a profound Peace, *Ali-Homajou* was in hopes, that in a few Years he would be able to restore the Finances, which do unquestionably deserve above all things a Sovereign's Attention. But as the Disorder in that Part of the Government had had a bad Influence upon all the other Branches, the Prince found himself in the greatest Perplexity imaginable. He laboured part of the Days and Nights to make such Regulations, which by his great Ability and Laboriousness, he alone was capable to invent, and put in Execution. He threw off part of the Business, and particularly the Detail of them, upon an *Eunuch*, who had had for many Years the Super-intendency of his Seraglio^o: His Name was *Rustan*^p: He was a Man of the most obscure Birth, of an ordinary Stature; of a rough and mean Aspect; of a difficult Access; without any religious Principles; having no other Merit but an intriguing Genius, and no other Ability, but that of finding out every Day Women of all Conditions for his Master's Pleasures. This was an Employment, which the Difficulty of meeting with Women adorned with the Youth, Charms and Wit, his Master required, together with his excessive Inconstancy, rendered very laborious: But for that

B 3

same

ⁿ *Louis d'Or.* ° *The Ladies designed for his Pleasures.*

^p *The Abtd. afterwards Cardinal du Elois.*

same Reason it was by this that *Rustan* gained the Prince's intire Confidence, and so great an Authority, that he even dared to refuse with the greatest Roughness, and with the most indecent Expressions, such Favours or Employments, which *Ali-Homajou*^a had granted. An excessive good Nature made the Master wink at the impertinent Conduct of a Slave, whom he certainly despised, but whom he judged he wanted on account of his uncommon Dexterity in providing for his Lust; and whom he raised, by Complaisance rather than from any other Motive, to such Posts, as the more eminent they were, the more they rendered *Rustan* contemptible.

Rica^r and *Hassein*^s, of whom we shall speak hereafter, had already each their proper Employment.

The Affairs relating to War, were under the Direction of *Ibben*^t, a Man whose Capacity was not equal to so great a Trust, and who had been raised by the Interest of the Women: He was otherwise pretty much beloved, being good natured, of a pretty genteel Behaviour, and having all the necessary Dispositions to be serviceable. He succeeded to *Akabar*^w, who had justly gained a great Reputation, and who on Account of his Merit, Experience, Affability towards the Gentlemen of the Sword, Zeal to oblige them, and above all his Misfortunes was still daily regretted. Being suspected to have conspired at some Misdemeanour, he was put in Prison by *Ali-Homajou*'s Orders. But notwithstanding his long and rigorous Confinement, notwithstanding the Resolution that was taken to ruin

^a *The Regent.*
de St. Florentin.

^r *The Count of Maurepas.*
^t *Mr. de Bretguil.*

^s *Mr.*
^w *Mr. Le Blanc.*

ruin him, and the passionate manner in which the Prosecution was carried on against him, and against his pretended Accomplices, they could not find Reasons to inflict a more severe Punishment upon him than mere Banishment: And even in this his Judges were charged with too much Complaisance for his Enemies.

Justice was administer'd by *Ibrahim*^{*}, the most learned Man in *Persia*^y, who had long filled with Honour the Office of *Deroga*^z, in which he acquired a great Reputation. His Merit alone raised him to the Dignity of *Divan-Beghi*^a, to which they added that of Keeper of the *Sophy's* Seals. An uncommon Example, so much the more glorious for *Ibrahim*, as the Choice that was made of him was generally applauded! What could not the Public expect from a Magistrate, who entered so gloriously upon his Office, who had a sublime Genius, an Integrity above all Temptations, an ardent Zeal for the publick Good, and who was perfectly acquainted with all that relates to the Administration of Justice! Whilst all submitted to *Ali-Homajou*^b, the Publick saw with Astonishment, that *Ibrahim*, who owed his Preferment to him, dared to resist that Prince, and controul his Will with an unshaken Steadiness in such Circumstances, as he judged detrimental to the State. Banishment was the Price of his Resistance, and an immense Glory the Reward of his Banishment. He had been too happy and too great, had he been able to support his Character under his Misfortune. But being too soon disgusted with his Retirement, or tired with the repeated Sollicitations of

B 4

his

^{*} Mr. D'Agneſſeau. ^y France. ^z Advocate General.
^a Chancellor. ^b The Regent.

his Friends and Relations; or moved on one hand by the Hopes with which the Court flattered him, and on the other by a desire of getting Preferments for his Children, he yielded, and made the Glory he had so dearly bought, fall a Sacrifice to frivolous Motives. He was restored to those Functions only which related to the Administration of Justice; but being dejected by Age, or by Reflections, he proved ever since but a very ordinary Man, weak, wavering, applying himself only to Matters of Form, and inconsiderable Details, finishing no Affairs, for sifting them too much, as much slighted now, as he was honoured before, giving himself up too much to his Son, whose bold Projects and violent Counsels engaged him to bring the Sovereign Authority and the Dignity of his Place into Competition with inferior Officers of Justice, who imagining that nothing could be done without them, dared to rise against their Chief with an ill-timed Obstinacy, to which they themselves fell at last a Sacrifice. The Moment that *Ibrahim* was out of Favour, the Functions of his Office, were bestowed upon *Daracha*^c, a Man of a noble Family, who had a great deal of Wit, and was very understanding; but hard-hearted, and untractable, Defects which answered very well his black and meagre Face, and his sour Countenance; but they were not natural to him, for he was born of a cheerful and polite Temper. He had for a long time filled up the Place of *Great-Cadi*^d, which requires a rough and severe Countenance, to which he had used himself so much, that he could not overcome it.

When

^c Mr. D'Argenson, Lieutenant of the Police.

^d Lieutenant of the Police.

When *Ali-Homajou* restored *Ibrahim* to the Functions of his Office, he judged proper to continue *Daracha* in the Post of Keeper of the *Sophi's* Seals (a), a Place of Trust and Profit, of which *Ibrahim* could not see himself deprived without Vexation. But the Prince designing to make the *Divan-Beghi* ^a, sensible of the Danger that attends the opposing of the Great, this splitting of his Office was a Continuation of Punishment, to which *Ibrahim* had full Time to use himself, for the Seals were not restored to him, but about sixteen Years after *Ali-Homajou's* Death.

Daracha died some Time before *Ali-Homajou*, and was succeeded in his Office by *Fazel* ^b, Grand-son to a Merchant, who was grown rich by Trade. He was a Man who had been a very long Time engaged in such Employments as relate to the Finances, but of two shallow Brains to be made a Minister of State, being always led by others in his Opinions, and who owed the Regard that was paid him, only to his Son *Abdoul* ^c, First Secretray of State. The latter had a great deal of Wit, was beloved by the Nation, esteemed by Foreigners, in Favour with *Ali-Homajou*, performed the Functions of his Office with Honour, was a great Politician, and an honest Man. Under the *Athemadoulet* *Ismael Beg* ^d,

B 5

of

(a) The Office of Cancellor in *France* is for Life, nor can a Man be deprived of it unless he be tried and condemned. So that when a Chancellor falls under the Displeasure of the Court, he is removed from the Functions of his Office, but keeps the Title, and a Keeper of the Seals is appointed to perform the Chancellor's Functions, which relate to the Administration of Justice.

^a Chancellor.

^b Mr. D'Armenoville.

^c Mr.

De Morville.

^d Cardinal de Fleury.

of whom we shall speak hereafter, the *Sophi's* Seals were taken from his Father, whom he supported by his Merit and Credit. This Disgrace turned *Abdoul's* Brains to such a Degree, that he was mad enough to resign his Post of First Secretary of State. From that Moment the Father and the Son were entirely neglected and forgotten (an Accident common at Courts) and they found themselves reduced to a solitary Life, so much the more grievous to them, as they had seen themselves surrounded with a numerous and splendid Court. The Grief that seized them both carried them soon to the Grave.

We shall doubtless be charged here with not following exactly the Order of Time and Events: But we thought it proper, even for the Reader's Conveniency, to relate in one Breath all that regards the same Person, or is connected with the same Fact, in order to avoid Repetitions, and the Disagreeableness of splitting Events, which always creates Perplexity and Confusion. This is the Method which we have followed throughout the Course of this Work: If it be blamed, we beg the Reader's Indulgence for it.

Ali-Homajou^d, spent the Morning in giving Audience and dispatching Business, and the Afternoons were designed for his Pleasures, which were often continued till late at Night. Being then shut up in his *Haram* with lovely Women and some Lords, whom he admitted into his Familiarity, he made amends for the Fatigues of Government by indulging himself in voluptuous Pleasures, which he often carried to the utmost Excess of Debauchery. But as we design to consider him only as a Statesman, we shall say nothing of his private Life, nor shall we enter
into

^d *The Regent.*

into a Description of those famous Entertainments, in which Pleasures of all kinds, even such as put Nature to the Blush, succeeded each other by Turns. This is a Task belonging only to those who shall undertake to write the History of that Prince.

Though *Ali-Homajou* denied himself no kind of Pleasure, yet he did not for all that neglect the Affairs of Government, nor was he the less active in giving proper Orders, and seeing them executed. Being informed that there was a Conspiracy on Foot in one of the Northern Provinces of *Persia**, he found means to discover, that some powerful Lords of that Province were at the Head of it, and had been bribed by the Emissaries of the Emperor of *China*†, who had promised to support the Rebels. Hereupon, *Ali-Homajou*, under a Pretence of changing the Garrisons in the Kingdom, caused immediately several Bodies of Troops, whose Leaders were entirely devoted to him, to march into that Province, and caused the Guilty to be taken up: But as he was not of a bloody Disposition, only a few of the Ring-leaders were put to Death. Thus he prevented the general Revolt of a Province, whose Example many others would doubtless have followed. This is an extraordinary Instance of Clemency in a Prince, who is provoked, and has it in his Power to punish; but at the same Time a noble Lesson, teaching those who govern, that in case of a Rebellion it is the Quality, rather than the Quantity of the Blood which is spilt, that brings the Subjects back to their Duty, and restrains those, whose Loyalty is wavering; and that in such a Case, nothing is

B 6

more

* France.

† The King of Spain,

more essential than a proper Method of seizing the Guilty, Secrecy, and Dispatch.

The publick Tranquillity being thus restored, *Ali-Homajou* ^z thought of nothing more than to be revenged of the Emperor of *China* ^b, by carrying the War into his own Dominions. But as it was not Prudence to declare his Intentions before he had secured his Frontiers against the neighbouring Princes, who might take an Advantage of that War, and of a Time of Minority, to invade the Kingdom, he concluded an Offensive and Defensive Alliance with the Emperors of *Mogol* ⁱ, and *Japan* ^k, and with the Sovereigns of the Island of *Ceylon* ^l. This Treaty, which was kept very secret, was no sooner signed, but *Ali-Homajou* threw off the Mask, and caused an Army to enter suddenly into *China* ^m. The Emperor being surprized, and dreading his Enemy with very good Reason, temporiſes; he cauſes ſome Advances to be made to the Court of *Persia* ⁿ; Negotiations are ſet on Foot, and a Peace is at laſt concluded on Condition of a treble Marriage, namely of a *Chineſe* ^o Princeſs with young *Cha-Sephi* ^p, and two Daughters of *Ali-Homajou* with the two eldeſt Sons of the Emperor of *China*. *Ali-Homajou* conſented ſo much the more willingly to a Peace, as his Deſign was not to carry on a ſerious War againſt the Monarch of *China*, but only to diſquiet him, and to create him Buſineſs enough in his own Dominions to prevent him from meddling with the Affairs of *Persia*. Thus ended that War,

^z The Regent.
^m Spain.
^p French King.

^b The King of Spain.
ⁿ France.

ⁱ The Emperor of Germany.
^k England.
^o The Spanish Infanta.

^l The Dutch.

War, which was finished as soon almost as it begun.

In order to perform the Conditions of the Treaty, the three Princesses were exchanged at the same Time on the Borders of the two Empires. But of these three Marriages, one only was consummated (*b*). The two others were put off on Account of the Infancy of the Parties, and, for Reasons of State, did not take Place afterwards.

About the Time of that War, arrived at *Ispahan*^a, a *Japonese*^r, a Man of a projecting Genius, whom a Desire to make his Fortune had led to the Courts of several Princes, by whom he could not get his Schemes approved. He found Access with *Ali-Homajou*, which was no difficult Matter; and as he was perfectly acquainted with the bad State of the Finances in *Persia*, and the Prince's Perplexity, he communicated a Scheme to him, by which he took upon him, not only to pay off in a very short Time, all the Debts of *Cha-Abas*^s, but also to enrich the Kingdom, and to render it more powerful and flourishing, than it ever was. *Ali-Homajou* liked that Scheme, which in Speculation appeared very noble, and the *Japonese* was ordered, to set himself without Delay about the Execution of it. One is struck with Astonishment at seeing a Prince of so much Wisdom run headlong into a Scheme, the Mischief of which he could not but be sensible of: One

(*b*) Namely, that of the eldest Son of the King of Spain, who was *Lewis* I. with the Duke of Orleans's Daughter. *Lewis* came to the Crown by his Father's Abdication, and dying within a Year after, *Philip* ascended the Throne again.

^a Paris.

^r An Englishman, or rather Scotchman,

^s Namely Law.

^s Lewis XIV.

One would be inclined to think, that he had Views unworthy of his Birth, and of a Statesman, or, which is more probable, that he imagined the Confusion was such as could not be remedied but by a greater Confusion. And indeed, in less than eighteen Moons the Fortunes of the People were turned topsy-turvy, and the Kingdom was ruined.

This Scheme^t consisted among other Things, in putting in the Room of Gold and Silver *Roupies*^u, with which *Persia* abounded, a kind of small bitter Almonds, which served for small Money in the neighbouring Countries, and to cause them even to be preferr'd before real Coin, by putting the Publick into a sort of unavoidable, though voluntary Necessity, to set upon them a much higher Value than that of the real Coin, and thus to restore the publick Credit, by causing all the Money in the Kingdom, to pass into the Sovereign's Coffers, whom the Projector pretended by that Means to make the General Cashier or Banker of the Nation. A most singular Method this, to restore publick Confidence; and of which future Ages will not afford a second Instance.

We shall not expatiate upon that Event, nor on the greatest Part of those which happened during the seven Years and some Moons that *Ali-Homajou* * steered the Helm of State, the Memoirs of those Times having giving a full Account of them. Our Design being only to relate such Things as are unknown, or have not been written, or which it is impossible to pass over in Silence, we shall proceed to a Particular which is but little known: It relates to Prince
Giasfer

^t The Mississippi Scheme allegorically described. ^u Coin
in general. * The Regent.

Giafer ^y, whom *Ali-Homajou* went to visit in the Fortrefs of *Ispahan* ^z, where he had been kept a Prisoner for several Years. This visit was probably occasioned by no other Motive, but that of making himself certain that that Prince was still living, who was thought to have died of the Plague near thirty Years before, and whose Funeral was celebrated in the Sight of the whole Army. In order to put this Particular in a full Light, we must trace it back from the Reign of *Cha-Abas* the Great ^a.

That Monarch was extremely fond of the fair Sex, and had several Mistresses. The first was an *Indian* ^b without Beauty, tall, and of a pretty good Shape, but whom Heaven had abundantly favoured with Wit, and amorous Inclinations. Her Heart was full of that delicate Tenderness, which is the Charm of Love, and perhaps the chief Merit of a Woman. *Cha-Abas* loved her beyond Expression, and had a Son by her, whom he called *Giafer*. This Prince was educated with all possible Care; he was handsome, well made, full of Wit, but proud, passionate, not capable to stoop so as to pay to *Sophi-Mirza* ^c, the only legitimate Son of *Cha-Abas*, and the presumptive Heir of his Crown, the Respect he owed to a Prince born to be his King. These two young Princes, almost of the same Age, were of very opposite Characters. *Sophi-Mirza*, who for his Person was full as agreeable as *Giafer*, was infinitely above him with regard to the Sweetness of his Temper, his Affability, and good Nature. These Qualities, so much the more to be admired, as they are seldom to be found in a Prince born to reign, rendered

Sophi-

^y *The Duke of Vermandois.* ^z *Paris.* ^a *Lewis XIV.*

^b *Madem. de la Valiere.* ^c *The Dauphin.*

Sophi Mirza the Object of *Giafer's* Contempt. The latter declared on every Occasion, that he lamented the Fate of the *Persians*^d, for being once to obey a Prince, without any Wit, and so little worthy to govern them. *Cha-Abas*, to whom an Account was daily given of *Giafer's* Behaviour, was very sensible of the Irregularity of it, but his Authority always yielded to a Father's Love; and this Monarch, so absolute in every Thing else, had not the Strength to punish a Son, who abused his Tenderneſs for him. At laſt, *Giafer* forgot himſelf one Day ſo far, as to ſtrike *Sophi-Mirza*. *Cha-Abas* was immediately acquainted with it, and trembled for the Guilty. But however willing he was to pretend Ignorance of the Attempt, what he owed to himſelf, and to his Crown, and the Noiſe that Action had made at Court, could not ſuffer him to hearken to his Tenderneſs. He calls together, but not without the utmoſt Reluctancy, his moſt intimate Confidants, ſhews them all his Grief and Concern, and aſks their Advice. Conſidering the Atrocity of the Crime, and conformably to the Laws of the State, they all voted for Death. What a Stroke for too tender a Father! However, one of the Miniſters, more affected than the Reſt by *Cha-Abas's* Affliction, told him there was a Method to puniſh *Giafer*, without taking away his Life. That he was to be ſent to the Army, which lay then on the Frontiers, towards *Feldran*^e; that ſoon after his Arrival a Report ſhould be ſpread, that he was taken ill with the Plague, in order to frighten and keep from him, all thoſe who might have a Mind to ſee him; that after a few Days of this pretended Illneſs, he ſhould be ſaid to be dead

^d The French.^e Flanders.

dead of it ; and that, whilst in the Sight of the whole Army his Funeral Rites should be performed according to his Birth, he should be carried in the Night-time with the utmost Secrecy, to the Fortrefs of *Ormus*^c, to end his Days there. This Council was generally approved, and especially by the disconsolate *Cha-Abas*.

They chose trusty and discreet Men to conduct this whole Affair. *Giafer* sets out for the Army with a splendid Equipage ; every Thing is punctually executed as it was projected ; and whilst in the Camp they are lamenting the Death of this unfortunate Prince, he is conducted through By-roads, to the Isle of *Ormus*, and delivered into the Hands of the Commander, who had already received Orders from *Cha-Abas*, not to suffer his Prisoner to be seen by any Person whatsoever.

One single Servant, who was in the Secret, was carried thither with the Prince ; but as he died on the Road, the Leaders of the Escort disfigur'd his Face with their Daggers, to prevent his being known, left him in the Road, after they had stripp'd him for greater Precaution, and went on.

The Governor of the Citadel of *Ormus*, treated his Prisoner with the greatest Respect ; he waited upon him himself, and took the Dishes at the Door of his Appartment from the Cooks, none of whom ever saw *Giafer's* Face. This Prince took it into his Head one Day to engrave his Name with the Point of a Knife on the Back of a Plate. A Slave, into whose Hands that Plate fell, imagined he should make his Court to the Governor by bringing that Plate to him, and hoped to be rewarded for it. But the unfortunate Wretch was greatly mistaken ; he was made away

away with immediately, in order to bury with him so important a Secret. An unnecessary Precaution! Since it is more than probable, from the Facts we have been relating, that the Secret was but ill kept: Which is a very common Accident, especially in the Affairs of Great Men, who are subject to trust with their Secrets several Persons, amongst whom there are always some who are indiscreet, either by their natural Temper, or by Interest, and often through Hatred and Ingratitude.

Giafer continued several Years in the Citadel of *Ormus*, from whence he was removed to be carried into that of *Ispahan*[†], when *Cha-Abas*, to reward the Fidelity of the Keeper, made him Governor of the Citadel of *Ispahan*, which came to be vacant. It was indeed but Prudence to make *Giafer* follow the Fate of him, with whom he was first intrusted. And it would have been acting against all the Rules of Prudence, to trust a new Confident, who might prove less trusty and less discreet.

They took the Precaution both at *Ormus*, and at *Ispahan*, to make the Prince wear a Mask, when either on the Account of Sickness, or for some other Reasons, they were obliged to expose him to publick View. Several Persons of Credit have asserted, that they have seen more than once that Prince masked; and that he said *thee* and *thou* to the Governor, who on the contrary paid him infinite Respects.

If it be asked, why *Giafer*, since he long survived to *Cha-Abas* and *Sophi-Mirza*[‡], was not set at liberty, as it seems he ought to have been, let it be considered, that it was not possible to restore to his Estate, Rank and Dignity, a Prince,

whose

[†] *The Bastile at Paris.* [‡] *Lewis XIV. and the Dauphin.*

whose Tomb was still subsisting, and of whose Funeral there were not only living Witnesses, but even written Proofs, the Authentickness of which, whatever might have been imagined, it would have been impossible to destroy in the Minds of the People, still persuaded to this Day, that *Giafer* died of the Plague in the Camp of the Army of *Feldran*^h.

*Ali-Homajou*¹ died soon after the Visit he paid to *Giafer*, and the same Year *Cha-Sephi*^k was declared to be of Age. *Ali-Homajou*'s Death was so sudden, that it was suspected it was not natural. To that Prince succeeded in the Administration of the State *Mirza-Haddi*^l, a Prince of the Royal Blood, less capable than his Predecessor, but as much given to Debauchery as he was. The Women had all manner of Credit, under this *Athemadoulet*^m, who after he had been three Years and an half in the Administration, was banished by the Intrigues of a *Mehter*ⁿ named *Selim*^o, who was his professed Enemy. This *Mehter* was an extraordinary Man, of a fantastical Genius, of a rough Conversation, setting up for an austere Philosopher, and a great lover and promoter of the Good of the Kingdom; but in reality a jealous Man, loving to be consulted upon Matters of Government, who would be one of what is called the *little Counsel*, and was an Enemy to every Placeman, who did not honour him with his Confidence. He was otherwise a Man of Wit, a skilful Judge of many Things, cherishing and protecting the liberal Arts, curious and pretty well versed in that Part of the Mathematicks, which relate to Mechanicks.

^h Flanders. ^l *The Duke of Orleans*. ^k *Lewis XV.*
¹ *The Duke of Bourbon*. ^m *Prime Minister*. ⁿ *A Nobleman*. ^o *The Duke of Villeroy*.

nicks. In order to promote the Downfall of *Mirza-Haddi* he made use of a *Moullah*^p, who had been Tutor to *Cha-Sophi*^q, and had a great Ascendant over him. We shall have hereafter an Opportunity to speak of this *Moullah*.

There happened nothing remarkable during the Course of *Mirza-Haddi*'s^r Administration, but the sending back the Princess of *China*^s, and the Marriage of *Cha-Sophi* with the Daughter of *Chekour*^t, King of *Thibet*, a Fugitive and roving Prince, to whom a Province of *Persia*^w had for many Years served for an Asylum; and the Opportunity which *Mirza-Haddi* lost of putting the Crown on the Head of one of his Sisters. The Reader will perhaps be well pleased to know what made that Affair miscarry.

After the Princess of *China* had been sent back, the Question was to choose a Spouse for *Cha-Sophi*. *Roxana*^x, *Mirza-Haddi*'s Mother, was a Princess who had acted a great Part under the Reign of *Cha-Abas*^y, and whose Genius was equal to her Ambition. She imagined, that as her Son was at the Head of the Administration, it would not be impossible to make one of her Daughters share the Throne of *Persia*. She imparted her Scheme to her Son, whom she found ready to enter into her Views, but did not think proper to appear himself in that Intrigue; not being willing, that if an Affair of that Nature came to miscarry, the ill Success and the Rashness of the Project should be imputed to him, but on the contrary, that both might be excused by the

Excess

^p A Clergyman, afterwards Cardinal de Fleury.

^q Lewis XIV. ^r Duke of Bourbon. ^s The Infanta of Spain. ^t Stanislaus King of Poland. ^w France.

^x The Dutchess Dowager of Bourbon. ^y Lewis XIV.

Excess of a Mother's Fondness for her Daughter : This was but a natural Sentiment, and the more so, considering the Ambition of a Woman, which is at least as powerful on the Heart of the fair Sex. He left therefore the whole Management of this important Negotiation to his Mother. The Daughter on whom she pitched, was called *Saheb*^z, a most beautiful Princess, then about twenty-two Years of Age, tall, exquisitely well-shaped, adorned with a great deal of Wit, and with such a Knowledge as is rarely to be met with among the *Persian*^a Ladies, even of the most noble Birth ; an uncommon good Nature, a sweet and amiable Temper, and a great and steady Mind : A Princess, in a word, worthy the high Rank to which her Mother wanted to raise her. She was from her Infancy retired into a *Haram*^b, which she would never stir out from; not even to take the Air in the Country. Being surrounded with Ladies who loved and respected her, she led a pretty solitary but peaceable Life. Her Mother went to see her, attended with two Women lost to all Reputation, and with whose Character it is proper to acquaint the Reader.

The one, called *Fatima*^c, tho' still pretty young, had lost something of that great Beauty with which she first made her Appearance in the World : Yet she was very handsome. She was a fair Woman, with large languishing Eyes, in which *Cupid* seemed to have settled the Seat of his Empire ; she had a charming Mouth, a Nose perfectly well made ; the Round of her Face was admirable, her Breast and Arms more admirable still : Her Shape would have been above the middling Size, had it not been so thick. In her whole

^z *Maden*. De Sens.

^a French.

^b *Convent*.

^c *Madam*. De Nesle.

whole Person appeared an Air of Voluptuousness, not to say any thing worse, which betrayed her Character. Her Soul was the Slave of her sensual Inclinations, her Heart deceitful, and her Wit but indifferent. Though she was married to a Lord of the Kingdom, yet she shared the Favours of *Mirza-Haddi*^d with *Zulima*^e, whose Character we shall now describe.

Zulima, the Wife of another Lord, was tall, well shaped, of a brown Complexion, not so beautiful, indeed, as *Fatima*, but more lively, more gay, more witty, of as despicable a Character, but with a steadier Mind, as much given to sensual Pleasures, caring but little whether she was esteemed or not, if Men would but pay to her Charms the Homages she required, which she would have real and frequent.

These two Women lived together in a perfect good Understanding, and shewed themselves Rivals only in the Invention of Pleasures, and in the Glory of tasting them themselves, or in communicating them to others. They were both destitute of all Modesty, and had no other Merit but that of being perfectly acquainted with the Art of leading the Senses by Degrees to the greatest Excesses which Debauchery and Luxuriousness can invent. It was impossible not to conceive Love for them, and at the same time not to blush for Shame at a Weakness, which a nice and refined Sense could not but condemn.

Such were the Persons, with whom *Mirza-Haddi*'s Mother would be attended: An inexcusable Fault! Which made her lose the Fruit of her Journey, and frustrated the Hopes, with which her ambitious Heart had flattered itself.

Saheb

^d *The Duke of Bourbon.* ^e *Mademoiselle De Prié.*

Sahab[†] did not suffer herself to be dazzled by her Mother's Proposal. The Throne, on which she was shewed it was in her Power to seat herself, far from tempting her, was displeasing to her; the Crown offered to her by infamous Negotiatrices, prov'd to her but an Object of Contempt. Being mov'd by her Mother's Goodness, she testified her Gratitude to her; but at the same time she could not forbear telling her, even in the Presence of *Fatima* and *Sulima*; "That she was far from thinking a Negotiation was carried on in Earnest, for which she had thought proper to choose only the two most despised and most despicable Women at Court: That as she had led a retired Life, ever since her most tender Infancy, she was used to look upon all Grandeurs with an unconcerned Eye, and renounced them for ever." The Princess, her Mother, used all her Endeavours to inspire her with Sentiments more agreeable to her Views; but could not succeed, and being vexed to the utmost Degree, she was obliged to go back without being able to persuade her Daughter. A rare and wonderful Instance of Steadiness, and of a noble Indifference for the highest Rank, in a Princess, young, beautiful, and who knew herself worthy of it.

Thus *Mirza-Haddi*[‡], by trusting too much to his Mother's Dexterity, or by an ill-timed Prudence, lost the Opportunity of raising his Family to the highest Degree of Power and Grandeur, and to secure himself against the Stroke, which his Enemies levelled at him afterwards, whom he would have seen cringing before him, if he had procured to himself the Advantage of being the

Sophi's

[†] *Mademoiselle De Sens.* [‡] *The Duke of Bourbon.*

Sophi's^h Brother-in-Law. *Chekour's* Daughter, as we have already observ'd, gained by *Sahab's* Refusal, and married *Cha-Sephi*ⁱ.

Mirza-Haddi was succeeded in the Post of *Athemadoulet* by *Ismael-Beg*^k, that same *Moulah*, who was the Instrument of his Downfall.

Before we speak of the new Scenes, which shall now fill the Theatre of the Court of *Persia*^l, it is proper to make the Reader acquainted with the principal Actors, beginning with the *Sophi*^m himself, whose Person and Character we have not yet described.

*Cha-Sephi*ⁿ, at the Age of sixteen or seventeen, was handsome, and of a proper Size: He had an exquisite fine Leg, a noble Air, large Eyes, a Countenance sweet rather than proud, brown Eye-brows, a weak Constitution, which, however as he grew up, was so far strengthened, that he was able afterwards to undergo the greatest Fatigues. As his Education had been neglected, his Mind was but little adorned; he was of a mild and bashful Temper, and had an unconquerable Aversion for Business, which he could not so much as bear to be mention'd. He made Hunting his daily Occupation, spoke little, unless it were with his most familiar Favourites, and out of Sight of the Courtiers. He shewed at first a great Indifference for Women, and for Feasting, both which he loved afterwards very much. He would be obey'd, but from a Sense of his own Rank, rather than from his Inclination, his Physiognomy not bearing that decisive Air, which shows the Character of an imperious Man. Differing much from his Predecessor, he loved neither Magnificence, nor those pompous Ceremonies,

^h *The French King*, ⁱ *Lewis XV.* ^k *Cardinal De Fleuri*, ^l *France*, ^m *The King*, ⁿ *Lewis XV.*

Ceremonies, in which a great Man shews so well what he is. He did not know how to reward, nor did he patronize the Sciences, nor the learned, nor those Men who excelled in their Art or Profession. However, he could speak very well of many things, and was perfectly versed in the History of his own Kingdom, and of the other States of *Asia* °. He was strongly addicted to his Religion, and as zealous, at least, as any of his Predecessors, for the Sect of *Hali* p. He was a good King, a good Master, capable of Friendship, and knowing how to give Proofs of it: Rather more peaceable than warlike, more weak than great; too negligent of a glorious Reputation, indolent, hating and dreading Application, little generous; not wanting for Genius, but seeing only through the Eyes of the *Ather-nadoulet Ismael-Beg* q, to whom he was too much a Slave: in a word, a Prince, who had not that Soul, which unquestionably makes a King to be known, and ought to put a Stamp upon all his Actions.

The *Sultana-Queen* was older than *Cha-Sophi*: Her Shape and Beauty were but indifferent, her Air and Port not very noble; but she was of a sweet and amiable Temper, good-natured, and had Wit enough to meddle with nothing, and not to enter into any Court Intrigue: She was adorned with Virtue and good Sense; too often left to herself, she had the Art not to shew that she was sensible of that Want of Attention and Regard. It is easy to judge, that with those Qualities, and that living indirectly under the Dependance of an *Athemadoulet*

° Europe. p *The Jesuits.* q *Cardinal de Fleury.*

themadoulet ^r who governed her Consort the *Sophi*, she had but little or no Credit.

The first Person of the State, after the *Chasephi* and his Children, was *Sesseing* ^t, Son of *Ali-Homajou*, a Prince in the Bloom of his Age, leading a retired Life, appearing seldom at Court, taking hardly any Share in State-Affairs, devout beyond measure, affecting all the outward shew of it, devoting himself by turns to different *Imans* ^t, regulating his Zeal by theirs, and for that very Reason being often a Bubble to his own Zeal, loving to do good; distinguishing every Day of his Life by Charities, sometimes ill-placed, willing to be thought a Man perfectly understanding the Art of Government, of which he had but an imperfect Theory; otherwise very virtuous and well-meaning.

Mirza-Haddi ^w, whom we have already mentioned, was tall, lean, not very agreeable in his Person, of a rough and uncomplaisant Humour; curious and fond of scarce and precious Things; in Possession of a very beautiful Wife, whose Merit he was not thoroughly sensible of; looking elsewhere for Pleasures, which he was not well in a Condition to enjoy; living high and nobly, and going but seldom to Court, since he came again into Favour.

He had two Brothers; the one named *Or-can* ^x, had been very dissolute in his Youth: the most excessive Debauchery was for a long time the Soul of his Pleasures, and Cruelty the Bounds of his Actions: He was well shaped, adorned

^r Prime Minister. ^s The Duke of Orleans, Son to the late Regent. ^t Clergymen. ^w The Duke of Bourbon. ^x The Count of Charolois.

adorned with a fine Genius: Through Age and Reason he deserved at last that his former Follies should be buried in Oblivion. The other Brother, whose Name was *Miram*^y, was handsome, but had a clumsy Shape, and a narrow Genius; he loved to live high, and caused Women to be searched for every where to fill his *Haram*, running continually from one to the other, and not always giving the Preference to her, who deserved it most, and being capable to spend all his Riches, in order to indulge his inconstant Inclination.

Morat-Bakche^z, the Son of a Sister of *Mirza-Haddi*, was in his younger Days extremely handsome and well-made: He had a great deal of Wit, and was of an amiable Character; nor did he, when grown to a Man's Estate, much disappoint the Hopes that had been conceived of him. He was Brave, loved the Art of War, was brisk, jealous of his Rank, but too Prodigal, which Fault put his Estate into some Disorder.

Among the Princes, who made a Figure at Court, were two Brothers, Sons to *Cha-Abas*^a, by a Slave, whom he had been extremely fond of. The eldest, whom we have already mentioned, was named *Soliman*^b, He had a bright Genius, a great Sprightliness, a noble Soul; was honest and capable to govern, but all those fine Qualifications were a little soiled by too great a Propensity to Covetousness.

The youngest, whose Name was *Sevagi*^c, was handsome, well-shaped, generous, mild,

C 2

and

^y *The Count of Clermont.*^z *The Prince of Conti.*^a *Lewis XIV.*^b *The Duke of Maine.*^c *The**Count of Toulouſe.*

and compassionate. His Wit was not so shining as *Soliman's*, but he had an exquisite Judgment, and was very regular in his Manners. He was universally esteemed, nor was he less beloved, even by his own Domesticks, whom however he used a little too severely. Under Prince *Ali-Homajou*^d, he had some Share in the Administration, and acquitted himself very well of it. But his too exalted Sense of Virtue, and what is called a Genius for Particulars or Details, made People judge that he would hardly have succeeded in the first Post, and that by too much sifting State Affairs, he would often have made them linger too long. In a word, he was thought too honest a Man to make a good Minister. We shall have again an Opportunity to speak of that Prince.

Ismael-Beg^e was at least threescore and thirteen Years old, when *Cha-Sephi*^f made him *Athemadoulet*^g. Being born in one of the Southern Provinces of *Persia*^h, of Parents if not obscure, at least very little known, he was designed for the State of *Iman*ⁱ, and educated in the Sciences proper for that Profession, into which he entered very young. His young Heart devoured with Ambition, would not suffer him to consider, without a kind of Madness, that he was condemned to spend his Days in a remote Province, and his Desires carried him daily with great Violence towards the Court. He made Interest, and succeeded so well, that he presented himself there, well provided with pretty good Letters of Recommendations, which his Youth, and agreeable

^d *The Regent.* ^e *Cardinal de Fleury.* ^f *Lewis XV.*
^g *Prime Minister.* ^h *France.* ⁱ *Of a Clergyman.*

able Person rendered effectual. This young *Iman* appeared immediately with a noble Boldness upon that new Stage, where he was not long looked upon as a Stranger: He soon obtained a Place of *Moullah*^k; and some Years after, by dint of Intrigues, he was appointed by *Cha-Abas*^l, *Scheick-el-Selom* (c) of a Province: He left that Post only to come to Court again, by order of the *Cha-Abas*, who had appointed him Tutor to *Cha-Sephi*; he gain'd an absolute Power over that young Prince's Mind; and kept it till his Death. During his highest Elevation he never beheld with Astonishment the immense Distance there was between his present Condition, and that he was born in: He had used himself very young to think that he was born for the most exalted Offices, a Notion in which he had been confirmed by the Astrologers, to whose Prediction he trusted very much; a Weakness common to the whole *Persian*^m Nation.

When *Ismael-Beg* took in hand the Helm of the State, he was still a pretty handsome Man, notwithstanding his great Age: He had a fresh Complexion, brisk Eyes, a piercing Look, a high Forehead, a well-shaped Nose, red Lips, a Shape above the middling Size, streight and easy, a fine Leg, a firm Gait, and a noble Aspect:

C 3

^k Curate or Rector of a Parish.

(c) A Dignity which gives to him, who is invested with it, a Right to determine all Points relating to Religion. *This Note is in the French Original; and it is plain the Author understands here a Bishoprick; viz. that of Frejus, to which the Abbet, afterwards Cardinal de Fleury, was promoted.*

^l Lewis XIV.

^m French.

Aspect: He had a subtle Genius, an unbounded Ambition, and was better skilled, than the most artful Courtier, in the Intrigues of a Court, knowing how to yield to Circumstances, able to make the best Advantage of them; his outward Behaviour was modest, attended with an Air of Candour and Sincerity, proper to impose upon the unwary: He spoke well, and had his private Views even in the most indifferent Conversations: He was a Flatterer with the Great, polite towards every one, extremely complaisant to the Ladies, with regard to whom he was suspected to have had uncommon Qualifications, by which means he had raised himself; he was voluptuous by Inclination, but sober and temperate by Reason; a dreadful Enemy, a contemptible Friend; deceitful and treacherous, not only by the Nature of his Profession, but even by Reflection, and with Design; repaying with the blackest Ingratitude the good Offices he received: he had a pretty extensive Knowledge, but too mean a Soul to be able to govern a large Kingdom. He was always undetermined, and consequently slow in the Expedition of Affairs; not knowing how to make War or Peace in a proper time; having no manner of Knowledge in the former: Sparing of his Master's Treasures beyond all Expression; and yet weak enough to buy the Friendship of neighbouring Princes by dint of Money, neglecting what was most Essential, and amusing himself with Trifles; wishing in general for the Good of the Kingdom, but not knowing how to promote it; jealous of the Prince's Authority, and stretching it too far;

far ; a zealous Adherer to the Sect of *Hali*ⁿ, and the open Tyrant of the Followers of *Omar*^o ; suffering himself to be too easily prepossessed, and incapable to be undeceived ; condemning without Examination, making much of Informers, paying little or no Regard to the Recommendation of Princes and great Men ; making his Favours to be bought by incessant Solicitations ; and yet so fearful as not to be able to refuse those who knew to ask for them with Boldness : Not knowing enough to distinguish and reward true Merit ; imagining that he understood Mankind, and knew how to employ Persons properly, and almost always deceived by those he employed : Too little acquainted with the strong and weak Sides of the Kingdom both within and without ; of so pacifick a Disposition, that often he dared not put himself in a Condition to force the neighbouring Powers to make Satisfaction for their Attempts ; chusing rather to affect not to be acquainted them, than to prosecute a Reparation by means both honourable, and proper to make the Crown of *Persia*^p be respected : For the rest, he loved his Master, was close, so as not to be sifted ; and had not made any Advantage of his Place, nor of his Master's Favour, to get Riches, having long resisted the Ambition of raising his Family ; but to be blamed in this, that as soon as he yielded to that Passion, he elevated some of his near Relations to too high a Rank.

Such was he, whom *Cha-Septhi*^q made Choice of to be at the Head of the Administration. The

C 4

Af-

ⁿ *The Jesuits.*
^q *Lewis XV.*

^o *The Jansenists.*

^p *France.*

Affairs of the Kingdom did soon take a quite different Turn. The Weakness to which it was reduced by the fatal Blow, which *Ali-Homajou*^b had given it, the Distrust, which had only encreased during *Mirza-Haddi's*^c Administration, the Scarcity of Corn, which happen'd the Year before he was removed, the Misery and Diseases, the unavoidable Consequences of a Famine ; the disadvantageous Rate to which the current Coin had been raised ; the Disorders which prevailed in every Branch of the Government, and especially in the Finances, all these Evils vanished away ; publick Trust gained the upper Hand both within and without the Kingdom, Trade revived, every Thing was put in a good Order, and *Persia*^d, which some Moons before looked like a waste and desolate Country, became in a little Time more flourishing, than perhaps it had ever been. If there were but this single Event during the whole Administration of *Ismael-Beg*^e, it does him an infinite deal of Honour, and deserves that, after the Example of ancient *Rome*, Statues be erected to him, as the Restorer of his Country. But if he did then promote the general Good of the Kingdom, he could soon after be charged with procuring the Ruin of many Families, by suppressing certain yearly Rents payable during their Lives, and charged on the very Funds of the State ; Rents which ought to have been so much the more sacred, that the Necessity of the Times, rather than the public Credit, had forced

^b*The Duke of Orleans by the Mississippi Scheme.* ^c*The Duke of Loubor.* ^dFrance. ^eCardinal De Fleury.

forced several private Persons, even as soon as the Administration of *Ali-Homajou*^f, to deposite their Fortunes into the Hands of the Sovereign at a moderate Interest. That Contrivance rendered *Ismael-Beg*^g odious to the whole Nation. It was reckoned unjust to make the *Sophi*^h win in less than one Day, what in a small Number of Years he would have acquired naturally and lawfully by the Death of the Persons concerned; this Injustice appeared the more heinous, as the Benefit hence accruing to the Prince was but small, and the Loss to every private Person very great.

Ismael-Beg was sensible of the Discredit he had drawn upon himself in the Minds of the People, and, to win again the Esteem of the Publick, he thought himself obliged to make a Sacrifice of *Mahamet*ⁱ, who had the Management of the Finances. He imagined, that by turning him out, he would persuade the *Persians*^k that this Sub-minister was the only Author of the Mischief; but he was disappointed in his Expectation: For though *Mahamet* was known to be a hard-hearted Man, always upon the Watch to seize a favourable Opportunity to promote the Sovereign's Advantage, yet he was reckon'd a Man of Sense and Judgment, he had acquired a great Experience, was very skilful, perfectly acquainted with the Condition of the Kingdom, and disposed to balance, with a kind of Equity, the Interest of the Prince with that of the Subjects. Far from suspecting him

C 5

of

^f *The Regent.* ^g *Cardinal De Fleury.* ^h *The French King.*
ⁱ *Mr. Pellitier des Forts, or, as it is in the printed Key, Mr. Doudan.* ^k *The French.*

of proposing that fatal Project, it was unquestionably known, that he had strongly opposed it. So that he was generally pitied, and *Ismael-Beg* alone continued loaded with the publick Hatred. *Mahamet* did not long survive his Misfortune.

His Post was given to *Rhedi*¹, a Man of a mean Extraction, who had spent Part of his Life in the Corps of the *Goulams* (a), where he commanded a Troop of fifty Horse. *Rhedi*, when *Ismael-Beg* pitched upon him, was already in a declining Age; he was tall, of a rough Aspect, a sour Look, a knitted Brow, a hoarse Voice, a savage Access, and the Tone of his Voice was extremely rough: He was charged with loving Presents, and with suffering even his nearest Relations to sell his Protection for Money: He had, by means of his Employment, established his Fortune and that of his Family, upon a solid Foundation. He was obstinate, unacquainted with Business, almost always refusing, seldom granting any Favour, and both without knowing why; making of every Thing a Sacrifice to *Cha-Sephi's*^m Interest; incapable to procure the Nation the least Relief, and not being sensible, that by requiring Supplies from the People beyond Measure, he drained the very Springs of the Prince's Treasures. He was incapable to procure any Favour or Indulgence to the Trading Part of the Nation; and

¹ Mr. Orrie: ^m Lewis XV.

(a) A Troop of Horse composed of Slaves, or Children of Slaves; they are most of them *Georgians*. This Corps had the second Rank in the *Persian Cavalry*.—This Note is in the Original.

and supported himself in his Place, only by an excessive Hard-heartedness, and by his uncommon Care to keep always large Funds ready, a kind of Merit esteemed much beyond its Worth, and which he was possess'd of to the highest Degree. In order to pay his Court to *Ismael-Beg* ⁿ, by seeming to comply with his Inclination to saving, he used to delay necessary Payments, and to cut off several Articles from the Bills of Undertakers and Workmen, without any Examination, and without entring into Particulars. Otherwise he was a Man of Wit, and acquired, during the long Time he continued in Place, the Knowledge he wanted: On some Occasions he gave good Advice with regard to some difficult Undertakings, the good or bad Success of which depended on proper Measures previously taken, and from Preparations proportion'd to their Importance; in which the Event prov'd that his Thoughts were well grounded.

In the mean Time, the Kingdom enjoyed a profound Peace: But *Ismael-Beg* questioned, not without Reason, whether it would continue much longer. The Jealousy of some Powers, always the Enemies of *Persia* ^o, the Contempt they had perhaps entertained for the Administration of a Man, whose way of living had been till then of a quite different kind, Treaties between several Princes, considerable warlike Preparations, which were making in the neighbouring Countries, every Thing seemed to forebode an approaching War, which *Ismael-Beg* judg'd unavoidable for *Persia*, considering her situation, and how much she was concerned
in

ⁿ Cardinal De Fleury.

^o France.

in the general Affairs of *Asia* ^p. Therefore this Minister renewed the ancient Alliances, entred into new ones, and, at all Events, put himself in a Condition to fear nothing. Augmentations were made in the Armies; the Officers had Orders to get their Field-Equipages ready, and to repair immediately to their respective Stations; Generals were appointed, and the Frontier-Towns put in a State of Defence.

A Rupture was at Hand, the Armies were ready to take the Field, when a Spirit of Conciliation seized all the contending Powers; so that the great Preparations which *Ismael-Beg* had made, came to be of no use, unless it be perhaps to make the Enemies of *Persia* reflect a little, and to inspire them with more Regard for her, and with more Circumspection. All the Princes put down their Arms, and, in Emulation of one another, sent their Embassadors to *Schiras* ^q, a City in *Persia*, which *Ismael-Beg* had pointed out to them, there to examine the respective Claims and Interests of the Parties, and to endeavour to secure the Tranquillity of all *Asia* ^r. Thus all the Powers found themselves obliged to come and treat, as it were, in the very Presence of the *Athemadoulet* ^s, and to sing to the Tune he was pleased to set them.

Persia acquired a great deal of Honour and Glory at that Juncture, but the greatest Part of it was due to *Cosrou* ^t, upon whom *Ismael-Beg* ^u had bestowed both the Place of First Secretary of State, and that of Keeper of the *Sophi*'s Seal, after the Disfavour of *Fazel* ^w, and the Re-

^p Europe. ^q Soissons. ^r Europe. ^s Prime-
 Minister of France. ^t Mr. Chauvelin. ^u Cardi-
 nal De Fleury. ^w Mr. D'Armenouville.

Resignation of his Son *Abdoul* *, two Persons whom we have mentioned above.

Cosrou was of a distinguished Family among the Gentlemen of the Law, and amongst whom he had filled with Glory one of the chief Posts. He was a great Politician, endowed with a sublime, but dangerous Genius. To a refined and delicate Wit, he joined an easy and obliging Access, a charming Familiarity, and an ensnaring Conversation. He kept Correspondence with the greatest Lords at Court, and conversed with them without Meanness; he was welcome with the Ladies; careful in procuring himself powerful Friends, whose Credit might support him, in case he should come to be out of Favour. He was skilful in finding out his Enemies, and could disappoint their Measures with so much the more Certainty, as he was perfectly acquainted with all the Intrigues of the Court: He had extensive Views, large Designs, and an almost unbounded Correspondence. He was secret without Affectation, and sacrificed part of his Sleep to Business, so that he was expeditious: He attempted many things at once, but was equal to them all. He was a Lover of Men of Merit, and a Protector and Encourager of the liberal Arts, zealous to make them flourish. He was beloved and courted by Foreigners, who went away from him always satisfied, and enchanted; he was dreaded by all the Powers in *Asia* †: He never refused, but what it was impossible for him to grant, and his Refusal was always attended with a great Politeness, and Testimonies of Affection. In every thing he was superior to *Ismael-Beg*, who
reposed

* *Mr. De Morville.* † *Europe.*

reposed his Confidence in him ; but he was tired with acting only as a Subaltern, so much the more, as he was sensible of his Superiority. In a Word, we may say, that he was a Man of Merit.

Excepting the Finances, and the inland Trade of the Kingdom, which was the Province of *Rhedi* ^z, the Detail of Affairs was divided between three Persons, who gave an Account of them to *Cofrou* ^a; the latter conferr'd afterwards about them with *Ismael-Beg*.

The first had the Direction of the Marine, and the foreign Trade ; his Name was *Rica* ^b. He had a long and lean Face, a large Forehead, large and blue Eyes, a pretty sweet Aspect, a long Nose, a Mouth neither small nor large ; a peaked Chin, his Head a little flat ; an agreeable Air, a pale Complexion, a Constitution which seemed weak, a tall and thin Shape, a thin Leg, and a pretty noble Countenance. He was lively, ambitious, born with a great deal of Wit, perfectly acquainted with all the Delicacies of his Mother-Tongue ; expressing himself with a graceful Air ; understanding, and working with Easiness, but lazy ; a Fault which his Inclination for Feasting and Pleasures, in which he sometimes spent whole Nights, forced upon him, by the Necessity he was under, to take in the Day-time the Rest he lost at Night. He entered very young, and in the Reign of *Cha-Abas* ^c, upon the Employment he had ; and as he had enjoyed many Years, he acquired in it a very great Experience, of which he did not make all the Use he might, and ought to have done. He loved Men of Letters, and the
polite

^z *M. Orri.*
Maurepas.

^a *M. Chauvelin.*
^c *Lewis XIV.*

^b *The Count of*

polite Arts; he had made several Friends, and knew how to keep them: But he kept Company only with a few voluptuous Men like himself, with whom, and often also with gay Ladies, he used to make in the Evening secret Parties of Pleasures, the Charms of which consisted less in the exquisite Meats, and most delicious Wines, than in the Abundance of witty, delicate, free, and even licentious Things that were said, and in the uncommon and diverting Scenes that passed there. He was beloved by the whole Body of the Sea-faring Men, whose Interest he strongly supported on every Occasion. He had found Means to please *Chasaphi*^d, who looked kindly upon him; nor was he out of Favour with *Ismael-Beg*^e, to whom he was reproached to have paid his Court with some Meanness, a Weakness which the Care of making his Fortune, and the Esteem and Advantages annexed to a considerable Post might render excusable.

The second was *Osman*^f, whom *Ismael-Beg* had taken from the Government of a Province, to confer upon him the Direction of Matters relating to War: An Office to which he was unequal, and the Functions of which he performed only by the Assistance of Men of an accomplished Understanding, and of whose Knowledge and Labour he reaped all the Honour and Reputation. He was too severe, little beloved by the Gentlemen of the Sword, whose Interest he did not sufficiently Support. He was worn out, not so much by Labour, and by Age, for he was not old, as by indulging his Pleasures without Moderation.

The

^d Lewis XV.
D'Angervilliers.

^e Cardinal De Fleuri.

^f M.

The third, whose Name was *Hassein* ^g, had the Direction of the general Affairs relating to the Religion of the *Gaures* ^h, and to the Disposal of the Places of *Moullahs*, and other Gentlemen of the Law ⁱ. This was a little Man, as thick as he was long, without any Ambition, and of a very indifferent Understanding; he was more taken up with Pleasures, and the Company of Women, than with the Affairs of his Office. *Ismael-Beg* found him in his Employment, and continued him in it; judging perhaps that the Business he was charged with did not require a greater Capacity.

If the different Statesmen we have been speaking of, be well considered; if their different Genius's, their Characters, their Talents, their Virtues, and their Defects, be compared together, one cannot form a very favourable Judgment of the Government of *Persia* ^k; and one may well be surprized, that that Kingdom, though rich, powerful, and peopled with Subjects, who are brave, industrious, of an unshaken Love and Fidelity for their Sovereign, was capable to bear itself up. *Cosrou* ^l was the only Person who could be said to have all the Qualifications necessary in a great Minister: But when the Jealousy of his Brethren could not cause the advantageous Schemes he proposed to be rejected, their Ignorance, their Laziness, or their Want of Good-will made them miscarry in the Execution. Thus that great Empire governed itself, if I may be allowed that Expression, and by the Habit of a certain Disposition to Order, to which it had been used a long Time; or to speak more properly,

^g M. De S. Florentin. ^h The Reformed. ⁱ The Bishops and other Clergymen. ^k France. ^l Chauvelin.

properly, the supreme Disposer of Crowns protected that of *Persia*^m, and his Divine Providence watched for its Preservation.

How much is the Fate of Kings to be pitied! Their Greatness, their Glory, the Happiness of their Subjects depend on the Choice they make of Persons for the Administration of State Affairs; and that Choice is very seldom the Effect of the Knowledge they have of Men, or the Reward of Merit, but is almost always the Produce of Favour or of Chance. Hence proceeds the Ruin of the Monarchies the most firmly established; Ruin, which is the more or the less sudden, in Proportion to the greater or lesser Number of blundering and vicious Men that are employed in the Administration, and to the Time they continue in it. A great and useful Lesson, which the History of all Ages teaches Princes, and which cannot be too often repeated to them.

Let us leave *Persia* a Moment, to give an Account of an Event, at which all *Asia*ⁿ was astonished. *Koturi*, Prince of *Jesova*^o, who since ten Years had found Means to add to his Principality the Kingdom of *Nechal*^p, being tired with governing Subjects, who were not less tired too with obeying him, resolved on a sudden to abdicate his Dominions in Behalf of his Son *Korsula*^q, then about twenty-nine, or thirty Years old. He kept to himself only a moderate Income, and a Castle to which he retired with a Woman Slave whom he loved entirely, and with a small Number of Officers. The Abdication of this Prince could not be believed, till the Moment People were positively certain

^m France. ⁿ Europe. ^o Victor Amadeus Duke of Savoy. ^p Sardinia. ^q The present King of Sardinia.

certain that *Korfula* was really in a quiet Possession of his Father's Dominions. Amongst the several Motives which were thought to have determined *Koturi*, that which seems the most probable is as follows. That Prince being pretty much advanced in Years, did not question but his Subjects were not very well pleased with his Administration, and were extremely attached to his Son, whom he looked upon as the greatest Obstacle to the Execution of a Design he had formed. He judged that they would refuse to acknowledge for their Sovereign the Woman Slave we have been speaking of, with whom, being blinded by Love, he was resolved to share his Throne: He chose therefore to lead an easy and quiet Life with that same Woman, whom, they say, he married, rather than to run the Danger of exposing his Authority, and to have the Vexation not to succeed in an Affair he had so much at Heart. But being afterwards animated by the artful Discourses of that ambitious Favourite, who had an absolute Power over him, it was not long before he repented that he ever left the Throne. He wanted only a plausible Pretence to ascend it again, and sufficient Means not to miscarry in the Attempt. The Means were soon afforded to him by the great Number of Malecontents his Son had lately made, by removing, without the least Regard to his Recommendation, the Ministers and principal Lords, of whom his Councils were composed; and the Pretence he was made to find in the Conduct of the present Administration, which could not but be looked upon as a Censure of his own: A Conduct, say they, which gave just Reasons to fear, that these Dominions which he had enlarged, and rendered flourishing

flourishing during a long Reign, were now going to decline, and to fall, by the Imprudence and want of Knowledge in a Prince, who gave himself over to such Ministers which the preceding Government, that was so understanding, always thought proper to keep out of the Administration: Men, besides, who could be justly suspected to have no other Views but their own private Interest to the Detriment of the State, since they laboured nothing more earnestly than to remove those who by a long Experience and unshaken Fidelity were alone capable to oppose their pernicious Schemes. Such Discourses being often repeated produced their Effect. *Koturi*^s formed secretly a powerful Party, by the Assistance of which, he would certainly have ascended the Throne again, had not *Korsula*^t, almost the very Moment the Plot was to be executed, been informed, by the Care of an able and vigilant Minister^u, of the Conspiracy made against him. He prevented *Koturi*, confined him so closely in his Castle, that one would have took him for a State Criminal, rather than for the Father of the reigning King. *Koturi* lived but about two Years after his Abdication. He was not much lamented at his Death, and carried with him to the Grave the Reputation of a deceitful, dissembling and faithless Prince, who abandoned a Party as soon as he found his Account better in the opposite Party, having spent his whole Life in making a shameful Traffick of his Alliance, without any regard to the most solemn Treaties. For the rest, he was a subtle Politician, knowing how to come to his Ends, understanding his own Interest perfectly well, capable

^s Victor Amadeus. ^t The present King of Sardinia.

^u The Marquis of Ormea.

capable to make the best Advantage of the Situation of his Dominions, the Usefulness of which with regard to the Powers who surrounded him, he was thoroughly apprized of. His Son, who was a brave Prince, and versed in the Art of War, shewed afterwards to all *Asia*^x, that by succeeding to the Dominions of his Father, he had also inherited his Genius, his Ambition, and his refined Policy.

In the mean Time, the Court of *Persia*^y was not free of Intrigues. Each Minister had his Party, each Party was headed by Persons who had a great Credit and Power, and the Women, being determined either by their Inclination, by their Fancy, or by some private Interests, were the Soul of these different Parties. The Family of *Mirza-Haddi*^z, with a great many Lords, whose Sentiments were ruled by the Rank and Power of that Family, supported *Cosrou*^a. *Roxana*, *Mirza-Haddi's* Mother, a proud, resolute, passionate, and revengeful Princess, something fond of Confusion, and who loved to make a Figure, animated that Faction. *Jesseing*^b, *Soliman*^c, and *Sevagi*^d, without declaring themselves openly against *Cosrou*, inclined for *Rica*^e and *Ibrahim*^f. The Authority of these Princes, together with the Credit of their Relations and Friends, who were very numerous, put it so much the more in their Power to balance the Party of *Cosrou*, as the *Athemadoulet*^g and *Sevagi* were Friends. The latter had declared himself particularly for *Rica*, and this

^x Europe. ^y France. ^z *The Duke of Bourbon.*
^a Chauvelin. ^b *The Duke of Orleans, the Regent's Son.*
^c *The Duke of Main.* ^d *The Count of Toulouse.* ^e *The Count of Maurepas.* ^f *Chancellor D'Aguesseau.* ^g *The prime Minister, Cardinal De Fleuri.*

this was enough for *Roxana*, to favour the opposite Side; for she had long waited for an Opportunity to thwart that *Prince* and *Soliman*, between whom and her, though they were her Brothers, there was a great misunderstanding. *Ismael-Beg*, who was Master of *Cha-Sepi's* ^h Mind, protected *Rhedi* ⁱ and *Osman* ^k, and that powerful Protection secured them sufficiently against all Events. As for *Hassein* ^l, his Happiness, and the little Jealousy he gave, supported him perhaps as much, as the Favour he was in with some Women, less however on his own Account, and of the Services he was in a Condition to do, than for the Sake of the Persons who had a Friendship for him.

Two Women, among others, made a shining Figure at Court, and by the Distinction which *Cha-Sepi* honoured them with, gave a great Advantage to *Sevagi* and to his Party. The one, named *Fatmé* ^a, was *Roxana's* Daughter, and *Mirza-Haddi's* Sister: A Princess who was once extremely beautiful; and though she had past the Prime of her Age was yet, on some Days, very handsome. She was neither tall nor short, but well-shaped, and every way graceful; she had a noble Gait, an acute and delicate Wit; she was of amiable Conversation, a good Mistress, a tender and constant Friend; being extremely moved at Quarrels and Disputes; she avoided giving Occasion to any; she lost no Friends but with Grief, and always by their own Fault; she loved doing Service, and seized with Zeal all Opportunities for it; she was both high-spirited and meek, sad and gay, indolent and brisk, sometimes humorous; jealous

^h Lewis XV. ⁱ M. Orri. ^k M. D'Angivilliers.
^l M. De St. Florentin. ^a Mad. De Charolois.

lous of her Rank, positive in her Sentiments, loving Pleasure, turning Day into Night, and Night into Day; and was thought to be privately married to a Lord of the highest Rank, who was said to have won her Heart many Years since, but whom, for some Reasons of State, she could never procure to be openly declared her Husband.

The second, named *Zelida*^b, was a long time united with *Fatmé* by the Ties of the most tender Friendship. Nothing could break their Union as long as Prince *Sevage* *Zelida*'s Husband was living. But after his Death she fell out all on a sudden with *Fatmé*, and these two Princesses, once inseparable, did absolutely cease seeing one another. This Alteration was the more surprizing, as *Zelida*, who had a great deal of Wit, could not be thought to be ignorant, how much it concerned both herself, and her Son, still very young, to be now more intimately than ever united with *Fatmé*. But as she was governed by *Nargum*, the first of his Family who made any Figure, and in whom she had intirely placed her Confidence, she thought and acted only by his Instigation. He hated *Fatmé*, whose Ascendant he dreaded, and to whom he was not acceptable; and he found Means to inspire *Zelida* with his own Sentiments. *Nargum*, though born with Wit and Talents, was not sufficiently acquainted with the Humours of the Court, and imagin'd that he could succeed in the most difficult Undertakings, without any other Assistance but his own Knowledge, and without any Support but the Rank and Credit of *Zelida*. He therefore

^b *The Countess of Toulouse.*

fore thought it beneath himself, to consult others and take their Advice, and to unite together all the Friends of *Zelida's* Family in such Circumstances, as deeply concerned the Interests, either of *Zelida*, or of her Son. The too great Ascendant this Man, who was but little esteemed, had gained over *Zelida*, and the Sentiment with which he had inspired her, cooled the Friendship of *Fatmé* and of other powerful Friends; and the ill-timed Steps he made her take in such Circumstances as were of the utmost Importance to young *Savagi*, impaired the Credit of that Princess, and lessened the Esteem she had gained at Court.

Zelida, born of a Family extremely illustrious by being match'd with Persons of high Rank, and by the most distinguished Employments, had a great deal of Wit, was of a proud Character, but a good Heart. Very much addicted to her Religion, she performed most scrupulously all the Duties of it, and had no Manner of Taste for noisy Pleasures; she knew how to render herself amiable according to Time and Circumstances: Her Thoughts were witty, and she expressed them with Delicacy; she was amusing, loved to spend high, supported her Rank with Dignity, was easily prepossessed, and never suffered herself to be undeceived: She was ambitious, jealous of the Prince's Favour, knowing how to preserve it; quick at undertaking, constant in the Execution; sometimes little, and too often hard-hearted towards her Servants; not enough upon her Guard against those who studied her weak Side, in order to lead her as they pleased; trusting and mistrusting the same Persons, often without well knowing

ing.

ing why : She was but little grateful, and less generous. She had brown Eyes inclining to black, and something deep, a Countenance proud or kind, according to the Persons she spoke to, but most generally rough ; a full Face, a beautiful Mouth, a charming Smile, a Complexion somewhat reddish, her Breast, Arms and Hands of an exquisite Beauty, a clumsy Shape, a heavy and ungenteel Gait, a piercing Voice, and an absolute way of speaking.

Whilst she was the Widow of a young *Persian* ^c Lord, with whom she liv'd but three Years, her Beauty and Wit touch'd the Heart of *Savagi* ^d ; he made Love to her a long Time, and being obliged to use a great Caution with regard to *Ali-Homajou* ^e, he did not marry her but till after that Prince's Death, who certainly would not have given his Consent to that Match. She was about thirty-six Years old, when *Savagi* gave her, together with his Hand, the Rank and Title of a Princess. Their Union proved one of the happiest in the World : *Zelida* repaid with the greatest Love, the extreme Tendernefs of *Savagi*, who renouncing for her sake all other Women, loved only her to his very Death, and gave her in that last Moment the strongest Proofs of his Affection. This tender Couple lived together about thirteen Years, and of all the Fruits of their Marriage they could keep only one Prince, who was so much the dearer to them, as it had been a very difficult Task to rear him up. His Mother doated upon him, and as from the Moment he was born she had been used to tremble for

^c French.
^d The Duke of Orleans.

^e The Count of Toulouse.

^e The

for his Life, the slightest Indisposition he labour'd under struck her with deadly Fears.

Prince *Sevagi*, since his Marriage, used to spend the best Part of the Year at a beautiful Seat of his, about ten Leagues distant from *Ispahan*^f. The Castle was an ancient Building, the Outside of which had no great Appearance; but the Inside was most sumptuous by the prodigious Sums *Sevagi* had spent to beautify and adorn it. A good Taste appeared in all the Apartments, the Disposition of which was no less convenient than well contrived. As that Castle was situated in a marshy Ground, the Air of it was not very healthful; but the Delight, which the Possessors of it knew to procure, and the Pleasure of Hunting, which an extensive Park, abounding with Game, afforded, drew thither continually a Concourse of good Company. The Air of Magnificence which appeared in that House, shewed the Wealth and Grandeur of *Sevagi*, and the Attention his Slaves had to make every thing answerable to the Generosity and noble Sentiments of their Master, gained him the Love and Respect of every one, and to them an universal Esteem.

Thither *Cha-Sepi*^g went now and then to divert himself from the Fatigues of a troublesome Court. It was not the Monarch that came to *Sevagi*'s House, but a tender Friend, charm'd to pass some Days with him and *Zelida*, and with a small Number of chosen Ladies and Courtiers. Hunting, which that Prince was passionately fond of, employed him Part of the Day; in the Evening Gaming and Supper afforded

^e Paris.

^f Lewis XV.

forded him new Pleasures, which used to be continued till pretty late in the Night. There the *Sophi*^h being pleased because he was free, appeared gay and amiable, he enliven'd the Conversation, was pleased to join with the Sprightliness of *Zelida* and *Fatmé*, was careful to direct his Speech to every one, and to set this whole little Court at Ease. *Ismael-Beg*ⁱ, though *Sevagi*'s intimate Friend, was seldom of those Parties, either on the Account of his advanced Age, or of his Health.

During ten Years, that is to say, as long as *Sevagi* lived, *Cha-Sephi* never failed to go every Year several Times to that Castle : But since that Prince's Death he went thither but seldom, which is a strong Proof of the Love and Esteem he had for him. It is true, however, that if *Zelida*, when a Widow, had led a less retired Life ; if her Son's Interest had made her sensible of the Necessity there was that she should still continue to appear, and make a Figure at Court, in order to introduce that young Prince there ; if during the *Sophi*'s last Journeys to her House she had not avoided making one at Supper ; or rather, if *Nargum*, an ill-contriving and ignorant Steward, had not, by his insolent Behaviour, and an ill-tim'd Niggardliness, given Discontent to some of *Cha-Sephi*'s Attendants, who, without being of a certain Rank, had nevertheless a great Credit with him ; it is true, I say, that if it had not been for all, or some of these Reasons, there was Room to hope, that this Prince, who tenderly loved both the Mother and the Son, would have continued those Parties of Pleasure. But Means were found to
make

^h The King.

ⁱ Cardinal De Fleury.

make him grow out of Conceit with them, and soon after, to turn his Steps another Way.

The *Sophi* was not always taken up with Pleasure during his Stay at *Sevagi's* House; sometimes he locked himself up with him *Zelida* and *Fatmé*, and sometimes with either of them: and in those precious Moments they obtain'd from the Monarch whatever their own Interest, or that of their Friends and Dependants made them ask; but it was done with Discretion, and almost always with the *Athemadoulet's* ^k Consent, which they took Care to obtain beforehand, or to procure afterwards. It was in those little Councils that they obtain'd for the young Prince, *Sevagi's* Son, the Survivorship of his Father's Employments and Governments; and that they found Means to have *Nadir* ^l, *Zelida's* Son by her first Husband, called back from his Banishment, who, by an Imprudence, which his Youth alone could excuse, had entered into a Conspiracy, the Design of which was to procure the Ruin of *Ismael-Beg* ^m. It was in those private Meetings, that the Foundations were laid long beforehand, for the Removal of *Cosrou* ⁿ, and that such Strokes were levelled at him, as prov'd so much the more effectual, as he was ignorant of them; and here also it was, that by *Ismael-Beg's* Advice, who had some Thoughts to resign, Measures were taken to put Prince *Sevagi* at the Head of the Administration. Finally, it was in those Parties of Pleasure, that they

D 2

imagined

^k *The Prime Minister, i. e. the Cardinal.* ^l *The Marquis D'Antin.* ^m *Cardinal De Fleury.* ⁿ *Chauvelin.* • Lewis XV.

imagined they observed in *Cha-Sephi*° a rising Inclination for the fair Sex, and that lest he should consult only his Eyes and his Heart, to raise to the Rank of a Favourite a young and beautiful Woman, and for that very Reason ambitious and capable to govern him, they thought they could do nothing better for their common Interest, than to determine his Inclination in Behalf of *Retima*°, who had none of those Qualifications they dreaded, but was a Woman, who could be depended upon, and whom they made promise that she should be content with the Honours of the Handkerchief, and would attempt nothing with the *Sephi* without the Concurrence of those Persons, whom she knew, were in Possession of that Prince's Confidence and Esteem. A most singular Convention, by which *Retima* bought very dear a shew of Credit, and the Honour of making a Figure by *Cha-Sephi*'s Side in those Parties, to which none but his most intimate Friends were admitted; but a Convention, which she kept most religiously, as long as she continued in Favour. Her Faithfulness in this deserves so much the more to be commended, that it is perhaps single in its kind, and that she was no Doubt sensible, that there are some Moments of Triumph, in which a Favourite may dare any Thing, and ask any Thing from the Sovereign, even from the least courteous towards the Ladies, especially if she be his first Inclination. But it is probable that *Retima*'s Passions turned entirely to the Advantage of the Heart only, and that she looked upon *Cha-Sephi* less as a Monarch, than as a Lover to whom

° Lewis XV.

p *Madem. De Mailli.*

whom she might entirely addict herself; and accordingly she had a real Love for that Prince.

Retima, Wife to *Usbeck* ^a a *Persian* ^r Lord, was neither young nor handsome; she was near thirty-five Years old, had a long Face and Nose, a large and high Forehead, her Cheeks something flat, a large Mouth, her Complexion brown rather than fair, two large Eyes, pretty fine, very brisk, but something rough in her Looks; her Voice was coarse, and her Neck and Arms ugly; she was reckon'd to have a fine Leg, which perhaps was owing to her Leanness. She was tall, and walked with a free and deliberate Air, but with nothing agreeable nor grand in it, though she used to dress in an high Taste, and with an infinite Art, wherein she had a particular Talent, which the Ladies at Court endeavoured in vain to imitate. She had a great deal of Wit and Probity, and little or no Ambition: She was amusing, gay, of an even Temper, a sure, generous and compassionate Friend, endeavouring to serve others, but by indirect Means, not being able to do it herself, without running the Danger of losing the *Sophi's* Favour, the Friendship of those Persons to whom she was indebted for it, and above all, the Protection of *Ismael-Beg* ^s, who being sensible of the Necessity there was of suffering a Favourite, had been so well advised, as not to disprove the Choice that had been made of *Retima*, who, he knew, was not of a Character to endeavour to deprive him of the Ascendant he had gained over the *Sophi*.

D 3

It

^a *M. De Mailli.*^r French.^s *Cardinal De Fleuri.*

It has been surmized that this Passion was not real, and served only to cover a secret Commerce of *Cha-Sephi* ^t with a Sister of *Retima*, named *Zachi* ^u, lately married with a young Lord of the Court. *Zachi* was tall, not more provided with Charms than *Retima*, but younger. She had an infinite deal of Wit, was haughty, enterprizing, envious, revengeful, wanting to govern, and to make herself be feared; having few Friends, and little capable to make any, minding nothing but her own Interest; having no other Views but to make the best Advantage of the Favour she enjoyed, wherein she would have succeeded, if Death had not stopped her in the Beginning of her Career. In a Word, she would have proved a dangerous Favourite. She died in Child-bed, and was but little lamented; there were some Suspicions, that the too great Favour she enjoyed, and her restless and ambitious Temper did not contribute a little to shorten her Days. Her Loss made *Cha-Sephi* shed Tears for several Days. Tender *Retima*, who had an excellent Heart, assisted him effectually in that sad Office, and bewailed her Sister's Death sincerely. As the *Sopbi* did very much lament for the Loss of *Zachi*, and took a particular Care of the Child she had brought into the World, these were thought sufficient Reasons to believe that he loved her entirely.

The Pleasures which this Death had interrupted, took again their usual Course. Hunting, several Journies made sometimes to *Sevagi's* House, sometimes to other Country Seats not far distant from the capital City, the tender

^t Lewis XV.

^u *Madem. De Vintimile.*

der Inclination and endearing Cares of *Retima*, who always attended *Cha-Sepbi*, the Attention which *Fatmé* and *Zelida* had to divert him, and above all those Suppers he was used to take in those delicious Recesses, accessible only to his most intimate Friends, made him forget *Zachi*. Those Recesses were the Work of the *Sopbi*; without being entirely separated from his Palace, they had nevertheless no other Communication with it, but what was absolutely necessary for his Attendants to come and wait upon him. A secret Door contrived in *Cha-Sepbi's* Apartments, gave him Liberty, whenever he had a Mind, to go to those Recesses with those he was pleased to admit. Every thing there was ingeniously and conveniently disposed. In order to give the Reader a pretty exact Notion of it, we think we cannot do better than to transcribe the Description of it left us by an Author of those Times, who is but little known.

“ It was, says he (*a*), a little Temple, in
 “ which nocturnal Feasts were frequently cele-
 “ brated to the Honour of *Bacchus* and *Venus*.
 “ The *Sopbi* was the High-Priest, *Retima* the
 “ High-Priestess: The rest of the sacred Band
 “ was composed of lovely Women, and cour-
 “ teous Gentlemen, worthy to be initiated in
 “ those Mysteries. There, by a Number of
 “ exquisite Libations, and by several Hymns
 D 4 “ to

(*a*) The History of the several Religions introduced into *Persia* since the Conquest made of it by *Alexander the Great*, to the present Time. By *Kodgia*.—
 N. B. This Note is in the Original; but placed there with no other View perhaps, but to put the Reader upon a wrong Scent.

“ to the Glory of *Bacchus*, they endeavoured
 “ to render the Goddess of *Cythera* propitious,
 “ to whom they made afterwards from Time
 “ to Time precious Offerings. The Libations
 “ were made with the scarcest Wines, and the
 “ most delicious Messes were the Victims:
 “ And even often, namely on the most so-
 “ lemn Days, these Messes were prepared by
 “ the Hands of the High-Priest. *Comus* was
 “ the Steward of those Feasts, and *Momus* pre-
 “ sided there. No Slave was suffered to disturb
 “ those august Ceremonies, nor to enter the
 “ innermost Part of the Temple, but on the
 “ Moment when the Priest and Priestesses,
 “ loaded at last with the divine Favours, fell
 “ into an Extasy, the Fulness of which proved
 “ the Greatness of their Zeal, and declared
 “ the Presence of the Gods. Then all was
 “ finished: Those Favourites of the Gods were
 “ carried off with the utmost Respect, and the
 “ Gates of the Temple were shut.—There were
 “ certain Days in the Year, which were sacred
 “ to the God *Bacchus* only, and in which
 “ *Comus* also was Steward. These Days,
 “ which may be called the *lesser Festivals*, were
 “ those on which the High-Priest admitted in-
 “ to the Temple *Sevagi*, *Fatmé*, *Zelida*, and
 “ some others, in whose Presence, as being
 “ Profane, the *lesser Mysteries* only were cele-
 “ brated; and indeed, far from being of the
 “ fortunate Number of those, who were in-
 “ trusted with the essential and important Func-
 “ tions of the Worship, they were hardly
 “ worthy the little Share they were permitted
 “ to take in it.”

Whilst

Whilst *Cha-Sepi* indulged himself in Pleasure, *Ismael-Beg* and *Cofrou* * were busy about very important Affairs. The unexpected Death of *Mahmoud*, King of *Thibet* †, put all *Asia* ‡ in Motion. Every Power wished to see that Throne filled by a Prince on whom it might depend, and it was particularly the Interest of *Persia* not to lose so proper an Opportunity of putting again on the Head of *Chekour* § Father-in-Law to *Cha-Sepi* ¶, a Crown he had formerly worn.

Thibet is a large and fruitful Country, situated in *Great Tartary*. It borders on the Kingdom of *Zogathay* †, and on the Empires of *Russia*, *Mogol* § and *China* †. It is divided into *Great* and *Little Thibet*. The *Grande*es of the Kingdom have an absolute Power over the People, who are Slaves. The whole Strength of the Country consists in Cavalry: The Government is mixed; the King can do nothing without the Concurrence and Consent of the *Grande*es; but he has a Right to dispose of Employments and Governments, which however cannot be possessed but by *Thibetians*. That Crown has always been elective, and is sold to the best Bidder. It is then that the *Thibetians*, who are naturally covetous and greedy of Money, cause their Votes to be bought very dear, receiving Presents from all Hands, promising their Votes to all the Candidates, declaring this Day for one, To-morrow for another, and even often changing Sides more than once in one and the same

D. 5

same

* *Cardinal De Fleuri and Chauvelin.* † *Augustus King of Poland.* ‡ *Europe.* § *Stanislaus.* ¶ *Lewis XV*
 † *Prussia.* § *Germany.* † *The Key says Spain; but that must be a Blunder.*

same Day. When the King is to be chosen, the Custom is, that every Lord must repair with a certain Number of Troops to the Place appointed for the general Assembly: These different Bodies being united, compose a numerous Army designed to secure the Electors against the Attempts of any ill designing Candidate, and to afford him, who is elected, a quick and effectual Means to reduce by Force of Arms those who might be against him.

It was many Years since *Mahmoud*, Raja of *Lahor*^f, had been elected King of that Country. He had hardly taken Possession of his new Dominions, but being emboldened by the Proximity of his Principality of *Lahor*, whence he could easily get powerful Supplies, he attempted to stretch his Authority farther than any of his Predecessors had done, and to oppress the Liberty of the *Grandeess*. He was even so imprudent, as to attack, without any Pretence, the King of *Jalekeldar*^g, whose Youth he publicly despised. This injured King entered with an Army into *Thibet*, and being assisted by a discontented Party, he unthroned *Mahmoud*, who fled into his own Principality. At last having called together the *Grandeess* of the Kingdom, he caused them to elect *Chekour*^h, one of the most powerful *Thibetian* Lords, and who was intirely in his Interest. But the King of *Jalekeldar* being young, eager after Conquests, and, like another *Alexander*, designing to carry his victorious Arms as far as he could, was at last intirely defeated at *Lotupva*ⁱ. Immediately *Mahmoud* enters again into *Thi-*
bet

^f Elector of Saxony. ^g Sweden. ^h Stanislaus.
ⁱ Pultowa.

bet with a numerous Army, attacks and beats *Chekour*, and forces him to fly in his Turn. This unfortunate King thought himself happy to be able to procure an Asylum in *Persia*^k, where he spent his Days peaceably till the Death of *Mahmoud*, when the *Athemadoulet*^l thought proper to take an Advantage of it; and under the specious Pretence of arming in favour of *Cha-Sephi's* Father-in-Law, he endeavoured to execute some Projects of a much greater Importance. And indeed, if we may judge any thing from the Conduct of *Ismael-Beg*^m, on this Occasion, there is no reason to think that his only View was to set the Crown again on the Head of *Chekour*, but rather to secure an Opportunity which offered itself most naturally of kindling, by thwarting the Designs of the *Grand-Mogul*ⁿ, a War, the secret End of which was, to give, at the Expence of that Emperor, considerable Dominions to a Son of the Emperor of *China*^o, and to enlarge those of the King of *Necbal*^p, with both of whom *Persia*^q had for that Purpose entered into a strict Alliance, but more still, to procure considerable Advantages to *Cha-Sephi*^r.

Before we give a particular Account of that War, and of the Consequences that attended it, we think it proper to relate what happened in *Thibet* with regard to the Election of a King.

The *Mogul*^s, being seconded by *Russia*, did strongly recommend to the *Thibetian* Lords the Son

^k France. ^l The Cardinal Prime Minister. ^m Cardinal de Fleury. ⁿ The Emperor Charles VI. ^o The King of Spain. ^p The King of Sardinia. ^q France. ^r Lewis XV. ^s The Emperor.

Son of *Mahmoud*^t, who had succeeded his Father in the Principality of *Labor*^w, situated in the *Mogul's* Empire, and depending on it; besides which, that Prince had married one of his Nieces; these seemed Reasons sufficient to justify the Part he acted. In order to support more effectually the Party of this Candidate, the *Mogul* and *Russia* caused each an Army to march towards the Borders of *Thibet*^x, which was a very proper Method to make sure of the Votes of the *Grandeess*, who saw they had the worst to fear from two Princes who petitioned Arms in Hand. *Ismael-Beg*, more moderate in Appearance, caused it to be represented to all the Courts of *Asia*^y, that it was an odious Thing thus to constrain the Liberty of the *Thibetians*; but at the same time he caused their Votes to be bought with the Money of *Persia*, by an able Emissary he had in *Thibet*. This Proceeding, which was more suitable to the Character of the *Thibetians*, added to Promises which *Persia* made to assist them powerfully, in case they were attacked, and to the Inclination they had for *Chekour*^z, who was born among them, and had already governed them, produced all the Effect, which *Ismael-Beg* had expected. Nothing more was wanted but that Prince's Presence, to remove all the Obstacles that might remain still. Great Preparations are making in *Persia* for *Chekour's* Journey, and whilst a numerous Retinue is going towards *Thibet*, imagining, with the Publick, that they are accompanying the Prince, he, being disguised, takes a contrary Road, and arrives happily in *Thibet*,

^t The late King Augustus. ^w Saxony. ^x Poland.
^y Europe. ^z Stanislaus.

Thibet, attended only with one trusty Man. He is immediately elected by the Grandees of the Kingdom; one only, who did not vote for him, left the Assembly, and retired to some Distance from the Camp of Election, with the Troops he had brought with him, at the Head of which he proclaimed *Mahmoud's* Son. That Event would not have been attended with any dangerous Consequence for *Chekour*, if putting himself immediately at the Head of the Lords Army, as he was pressed to do, he had marched directly up to that Traitor, whom he would certainly have cut in Pieces. But whether it was that he was unwilling to mark his Accession to the Crown by the spilling of Blood, or through Indolence, or through Contempt for the Rebels, whose small Number did not seem formidable to him, he made not the least Motion, and gave the opposite Party Time to gather Strength, and to put *Mahmoud's* Son at its Head: This Imprudence cost him his Crown a second time; the greatest Part of his Followers forsook him, and joined with his Competitor. The small Number of those who continued faithful to him, could not withstand a superior Force: *Chekour* was obliged to fly, and to take Sanctuary with those who were willing to follow him, in a Frontier Town^a of *Thibet*, where he was immediately besieged.

This bad News was soon carried into *Persia*^b; the whole Kingdom, who looked upon the Affair of *Thibet* as their own, declared loudly, that it concerned the *Sophy's* Glory, and the Honour of the Nation to support *Chekour*.

^a Dantzic.

^b France.

kour. *Ismael-Beg*^c, or rather *Cofrou*^d, being delighted with such Discourses, which justified before all *Asia*^e, the great warlike Preparations that were making, caused a small Corps of Troops to take the Road to *Thibet*, giving to understand, that it would be followed from time to time by others, not being willing, said he, to send at once a great Supply for fear of giving Umbrage to the neighbouring Powers, with whom it was proper to keep up a good Understanding; and it was besides not prudent to remove the Forces of the Kingdom to a great Distance, at a Time when the *Great Mogul*^f, who was for good Reasons suspected to have Views contrary to the Tranquility of *Persia*, was in Arms.

The first Column of that Supply arrived, without any Accident at the Capital City of the Kingdom of *Balek*^g, the Sovereign of which was in Alliance with *Persia*. *Onumar*^h, the Sophy's Minister at the Court of *Balek*, a bold and enterprising Man, whom his Zeal rather than Prudence guided, puts himself immediately at the Head of that Column, and, against the Advice of the Commanding Officer, who would have waited for the remainder of the Troops, he marches to the besieged City, with a Design to enter it. Being come in sight of the Besiegers Lines, Impatience seizes him, and with an handful of Men, brave indeed, and who presented themselves with Courage before the Enemy, he attempted to force a Passage; but he lost a great many Men, and was killed by exposing himself as a mere Soldier.

^c *Cardinal de Fleury*. ^d *Chauvelin*. ^e *Europe*.
^f *The Emperor*. ^g *Denmark*. ^h *Count de Plelo*.

dier. The Commanding Officer, who had but too well foreseen that ill Success, made his Retreat, and returned in good Order to the Capital of *Balek*, where the rest of the Supply arrived a few Days after. A second Attempt was then resolved upon, but it was thought proper to endeavour a Passage by Artifice, rather than Force. They marched to the Enemy; but it was to no Purpose they employed all sorts of Stratagems: They would have been obliged to retire shamefully, had not a young Officer about twenty Years old, offered, and he engaged his Life for it, to cause Part of the Troops to enter the City, by carrying them in the Night-time in Boats by the River that washes the Walls of that City. That Offer was accepted, and the Officer, notwithstanding the Fire of the Besiegers, in whom the Noise of the Oars raised Suspensions, put happily his Troops into the Town, came back the same way, and with the same Happiness, and joined the main Body. That small Supply revived the Spirits of the Besieged, and being in hopes of receiving some more considerable Succours, they defended themselves vigorously; But not being relieved, they lost all Hopes. *Chekour*ⁱ himself, being sensible from the Condition to which the Town was reduced, that they should be very soon obliged to open the Gates to the Enemy, and having no reason to trust to the Generosity of the Chief^k of the Besiegers, whom he knew to have a Design particularly against him, left the Town in the Night-time two Days before the Capitulation, in Company with a trusty Officer, who knew
the

ⁱ Stanislaus.^k Count Munich.

the Country perfectly well, and after avoiding many Dangers, and by several By-Roads, he arrived at last with him at *Samarcande*¹, a City of *Zagathay*^m, where, by the King's Order, he had all the Honours due to his Rank paid to him. He continued some time in that City, and left it only to return into *Persia*, where he led a more peaceable and happier Life than he would have done upon the Throne of *Thibet*; by the Peace that was made soon after, the Title of King of that Country was continued to him. There were even several other Marks of Distinction added to it sufficient to satisfy that Prince, who had but little Ambition; but which proved to *Persia* a full and very real Indemnification (a) for the great Expences which *Cha-Sephi*, under a Pretence of supporting his Father-in-Law, made in the War which he declared to the *Mogul*ⁿ.

When *Chekour* left *Samarcande*, he was fifty nine Years old. He was a Man of a middling Size, a clumsy Shape, high Shoulders, a full Face, an agreeable Air, a pretty plain Behaviour, by which he had not sufficiently that awful and majestick Air, which is required in Princes. He had a good Heart, and a sweet Temper, with a generous Disposition, which his Fortune did not suffer him to indulge. He was no Warrior, and less ambitious, but he behaved himself with a little too much Familiarity. Differing very much in this from his Consort the Queen, a haughty ambitious Woman, constantly regretting her former Grandeur, whilst he

¹ Koningsberg. ^m Prussia.

(a) The Cession of the Dutchies of *Lorrain* and *Bar*.

ⁿ The Emperor.

he preferred Retirement and Liberty before the Pomp of a Court. That Prince's Life abounded with Misfortunes. Twice he saw himself seated on the Throne of *Thibet*; the first time by the Authority of a victorious King, joined with the Discontent of the *Thibetians* against *Mahmoud*. The second Time, by the Assistance of his Son-in-Law the *Sophy*. Twice he was forced to renounce the Crown, once by the Defeat of him who had made him King, and once by his own Indolence, and excessive Security; in a word, by his own Fault. Thus Fortune used this Prince, worthy on the Account of his good Qualities, to have met with a better Fate, but in reality more proper to lead a private Life, than to govern.

Persia having declared War against the *Mogols*, the *Sophy*^a sent two great Armies into the Field, the one to act upon the *Indus*^t, and the other in those Countries which the *Ganges*^s waters. *Boulaki*^t, at the Head of the former, having passed the *Indus*, took immediately, without much Resistance, a pretty considerable Fort^u, and advancing farther into the Country, he besieged *Doltabat*^w, a strong Place, which did not make so noble a Defence as might have been expected. Notwithstanding the Obstacles which the Nature of the Ground put in his Way, and a continual Rain, he carried on the Works with Vigour. The Soldiers, animated by his Presence and Example, went to the Attacks, tho' to their Waists in the Water, with a Zeal and Courage worthy the greatest Commendations.

^p *The Emperor.* ^a *The French King.* ^t *The Rhine.*
^s *The Po.* ^t *The Duke of Berwick.* ^u *Fort Kbil.*
^w *Philipsburg.*

mendations. *Boulaki*, being Master of the greatest Part of the Out-works, was preparing to attack the Body of the Place, when he was kill'd by a Cannon-Ball, in the midst of his Children and of some Officers, the very Moment, that being led by his brisk and boisterous Temper, or rather by his ill Fate, he was examining from the slanting side of a Trench, and without being covered, the Effects of some Batteries he had ordered to be erected. *Cha-Sephi* lost in him a brave, experienced, active and vigilant General, who caused a strict Discipline to be observed, and was of an uncommon Honesty. The Soldiers lamented his Death, but were not discouraged by it: *Sujab* ^x and *Ibbi* ^y, his Lieutenant-Generals, who were very much below him in point of Capacity, gained all the Glory of this Siege, the Place surrendering to them soon after *Boulaki's* Death. *Sujab*, a Man grown old in the Trade of War, and who had been the Artisan of his own Fortune, had the Direction of what is called in *Europe* Military Architecture, which however he did not understand thoroughly well; he was undetermined, never forming to a fixed Plan, but acting as Occasion offered: He often committed Blunders, and did not know how to improve the Advantages which his own Situation, or that of the Enemy might give him.

Ibbi, the Brother of *Zelida* ^z, whom we have already mentioned, had a great deal of Wit, and an extensive Knowledge of other Matters than such as relate to War, which he would however make the World believe that he understood

^x *M. D'Asfeld.*
Countess of Toulouse.

^y *M. De Noailles.*

^z *The*

derstood perfectly well, perhaps because he had followed that Trade a long while ; yet, upon the whole, he was but an indifferent Warrior, a great deal too cautious, a Defect, which as it gives the Soldiers Room to think their General is not free from fear, so it deprives them of that Confidence which is the Soul of an Army, and the most sure Expectation of Victory. He was short-sighted, an other Defect, which in the most critical Circumstances had made him take the Shadow for the Body. He was of a tall and proper Size, extremely brisk and obstinate, but little esteemed by the Troops ; otherwise a cunning Courtier, and happy. The Command of *Boulaki's* Army was committed to these two Generals, who being jealous of each other, did not act in concert, and performed nothing during the Remainder of that Campaign, nor the next.

In the third, to prevent the Prejudice, which the Operations might suffer from the Misunderstanding of the two Generals, *Ibbi* was sent to the Army on the *Ganges*^a, and *Seif*^b, one of the Generals of that Army, was ordered to go and take *Ibbi's* Place. Notwithstanding that wise Precaution, and though *Sujah* and *Seif* agreed pretty well together, yet the *Sophi's* Arms made no great Progress on the *Indus*^c, the *Mogol*^d having sent against them a great General. His Name was *Eveneg*^e : Grown old in the Trade of Arms, and having made War in several Countries, and with different Nations, he had gained a very great Experience, and justly deserved the Reputation of the greatest Warrior of

^a *The Po.*
Rhine.

^b *Marshal De Cogni.*

^d *The Emperor.*

^c *The*
^e *Prince Eugene.*

of his Age. He was of an illustrious Family, and supported the Nobleness of his Blood with an uncommon Merit. He had a most generous Soul, an exalted Mind, and such a Valour, as made him be adored by the Soldiers, dreaded and admired by the Enemies. Some Disgust they had given him in his Youth at the Court of *Persia*^f, obliged him to go and ask for Employment from the *Grand-Mogol*^g, who received him with open Arms, and employed him immediately. His first Exploits declared what he would once be, and as soon as he was promoted to high Decrees, he gave *Persia* frequent Occasions to repent, that she had not attached him to herself.

All that *Sujah* and *Seif* could do against a Warrior so formidable, and who was continually using Stratagems, was to keep the Conquests, and to post themselves always so advantageously, or to intrench their Camp so well, as not to be forced to fight. But considering the desperate Condition the *Mogol's* Affairs were in, by the considerable Losses he sustained in the Provinces on the *Ganges*^h, it was a Master-stroke in *Eveneg*ⁱ, to reduce the *Persians* to keep on the Defensive, even in their own Conquests. For if the *Persians* had had as great Successes on the *Indus*^k, as they had on the *Ganges*, the *Mogol* had been ruined. It is true indeed, that this Prince entered into that War against *Eveneg's* Advice, who was far from thinking, like his Master, that *Persia* was a contemptible Enemy. This Emperor's Name was *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*^l. We shall give hereafter an Account of his Person, his Dominions, and his Government.

Gemchid

^f France. ^g The Emperor. ^h In Italy.
ⁱ Eugene. ^k The Rhine. ^l Charles VI.

Gemchid ¹ was an old Warrior of fourscore Years, who had gained a great Reputation by his Courage, which an uncommon Happinefs, and a great deal of Presumption contributed sometimes not a little to render rash, rather than by an Experience grounded upon a deep Study of his Profession, upon which he entered very young, and with a very small Fortune, and in which he found Means to get immense Riches. This was the General appointed to command on the *Ganges*. He had in a manner solicited for that Employment; and it was something merry enough to see that old Man quite hoary, in a warlike Harness, make at his Departure such Rodomontadoes as would hardly be excused in a young Man. His Orders were to join his Troops with those of the King of *Necbal* ^m, and to attack the *Mogol* vigorously on one Side, whilst the *Chinese* ⁿ should attack him on the other. The Junction was made, and this Army, which the King of *Necbal* commanded in Chief, being become formidable, was in a Condition to act gloriously on the offensive. *Gemchid* behaved very well; but the Infirmities inseparable from a great Age, which were still encreased by the Fatigues of a Camp, threw him into a Sicknefs, of which he died towards the End of the Campaign, in a City not far distant from the Army, and, as they say, in the same Room where he was born. The King of *Necbal* seemed to lament his Loss, but in reality he was not sorry to be rid of a Man, who stunn'd him continually with boasting of his Capacity, and oppos'd all his Schemes, with so much the less Regard, as the Troops

he

¹ *Marshal De Villars.* ^m *Sardinia.* ⁿ *Spaniards.*

he commanded being very numerous, were the chief Strength of the combined Army.

Nessir ° and *Seif* °, Lieutenant-Generals under *Gemchid*, took after his Death the Command of the *Persian* Army. They were both brisk, covetous of Glory, winking a little too much at military Discipline, and for that very Reason beloved by the Soldiers, very capable to perform what is stiled a bold Action, excellent Under-Officers, and at the Head of an inconsiderable Corps; but Men, who had not Heads strong enough to consider the immense Particulars that relate to the Conduct of a great Army: For the rest, they were brave, and acted in Concert for the Good of the common Cause.

Nessir had, in the Course of this War, a little Misfortune, which was drawn upon him by his Obstinacy, in not fortifying, whatever might be said to him, a Post exposed to the Enemy, and which he asserted to be secure both by the Nature and the Disposition of the Ground, and by which nevertheless he was surprized in the Night-time, and forced in his own Quarters. His Confidence was even such, that having one Evening visited and secured all the other Posts, he gave himself over to sleep in the same Manner, and with the same Tranquillity, as if he had been in his own Palace in the middle of *Ispahan* °. He had hardly rested two Hours, but he was started out of his Sleep by a great Noise of Arms, and by the Cries of those who were fighting. He gets up immediately with a Desire to run whither Danger called him; but the Attack was so sudden and so well conducted, that

• *Marshal* De Broglio. ° *Marshal* De Cogni. ° Paris.

that the *Mogolians* ^r had already penetrated to his very Tent; so that, though still in that Disorder of a Man, who is just awaked out of his Sleep, he is obliged to fly, too happy to save his Person at the Expence of his Equipage. This little Misfortune, which was a natural Consequence of his Presumption and Imprudence, gave Occasion for some Days to the Soldiers Jest, who are always ready to ridicule every Thing, without respecting even their General; but as his Courage was not called into Question, his Reputation did not suffer from that Misfortune.

It was about this Time that *Cha-Sephi* ^s, to reward the Services which *Sujah*, *Ibbi*, *Neffir*, and *Seif*, did him in the Armies, sent to each of them on the same Day the great *Calaat* ^t.

Tho' the *Mogol* had sent his choicest Troops to the *Ganges* ^u, and had given the Command of them to *Semir* ^w, a brave and experienced General, yet they were roughly used there. Frequent Actions between Detachments, in which the *Mogolian* Troops were almost always worsted, Defiles forced, several Towns taken one after another, opened to the Enemies a Way towards the most beautiful Provinces of the Empire, and it was so much the more probable that they would make themselves Masters of them in a little Time, that *Semir*, having engaged a Battle, was killed the very Moment that the Ardour of his Troops, and a kind of Disorder in those of the Enemy, who till then had fought very bravely, gave him Hopes of a compleat Victory. Notwithstanding the Care that

^r Austrians. ^s Lewis. XV. ^t i. e. created them
^u Into Italy. ^w Count Merçi.

that was taken to conceal his Death from the Troops, they were soon acquainted with it. Being then frightened, they did no longer attack with the same Vigour; that Moment of a Relaxation, revived the Courage of the combined Army; it fell with Fury upon the *Mogolians*, who being discouraged, made but a weak Resistance, and took to their Heels.

The glorious Success of this Campaign, together with the Progress, which the *Chinese* ^v made on their Side, determined the Fate this War was likely to be attended with. *Sigoken* ^x, who succeeded to *Semir*, could not retrieve the Affairs of the *Mogolians* ^y, who were driven back from Post to Post. The King of *Necbal* ^z was present every where with an uncommon Activity and Valour. His Ability, at an Age in which a Man may want it without Shame, excelled that of the oldest Generals, and was the Admiration both of the Officers and the Soldiers. All reckoned to march to a sure Victory when headed by him. It was with such a Spirit, so flattering for a General, and of so good an Omen, that the Battle of *Orixa* ^a was fought: A famous Battle, which proved so much the more bloody, as the two Armies attacked each other in separate Bodies, which succeeded one another by Turns, so that it may be said, there happened as many Battles, as there were Bodies that engaged. *Sigoken* did all that could be expected from a great General, and the *Mogolians*, as though this had been their last Effort, fought like desperate Men. But at last, after a long Resistance, which cost them

^w Spaniards.
^z Sardinia.

^x Count Konigseg.
^a Guastalla.

^y Austrians.

them a prodigious Number of Men, they yielded the Field of Battle to the Enemy, who being extremely fatigued, and having also lost a great many Men, suffered them to make their Retreat without molesting them, being content with an Advantage they had bought very dear.

It was in this Action, that a *Persian* Officer of Distinction ^b, leading his Troop to the Enemy, had the Misfortune to fall down, and to be for a considerable Time trampled under the Feet of Men and Horses: He was at last taken up in a deplorable Condition, but which was not attended with any bad Consequence. He was one of the most handsome Men that could be seen, and was charged with being as much in Love with himself as a Woman; which occasioned it to be said, that trembling for his Beauty, he had chosen to fall, though with an almost unavoidable Danger of being killed, or at least disfigured.

Since this Battle there happened nothing material. The combined Army approached the strong Towns in such Dispositions, and with such Preparations as foreboded some Siege of Consequence. But some Propositions of Peace, which were made at the same Time, procured a Suspension of Arms. However, the Troops continued both on the *Ganges* ^c, and on the *Indus* ^d, till the Moment that the Powers at War being come to an Agreement, called reciprocally their Armies back, and Things were left in the Condition they were in till the Treaty of Peace could be signed.

E

Besides

^b *The Duke De la Trimouille.*
Italy.

^d *The Rhine.*

^c *The Po, i. e. in*

Besides the considerable Losses which the Emperor of *Mogol*^e had suffered, during this War, and which made him wish to see the End of it, there were other Considerations not less proper to incline him to a Peace. This Prince was fifty-one Years old, and of a weak Constitution. He had no other Posterity but Daughters, nor did the Age of the Empress, who was near forty-five, give him much Hope ever to have a Son, who might raise his Family, which was to become extinct at his Death. Besides this, the Fear of leaving to the Princesses^f, who were still young, a ruinous War to carry on, and perhaps also the Design of marrying the Eldest to some Prince, whom he might persuade his Subjects to acknowledge for his Successor, wherein he would not expose himself to the Danger of being thwarted by those Powers, with whom he was actually at War; all these Motives together rendered him tractable.

After some preliminary Negotiations between his Ministers and those of *Persia*^g, which were kept very secret for fear the Emperor of *China*^h, and the King of *Necbal*ⁱ, should raise some Difficulties which might delay the Success of the Treaty, the Articles were signed at *Gehanabad*^k, the Seat of the *Mogol's* Empire. They amounted to this. *That Chekour*^l should abdicate, and should nevertheless be acknowledged King of *Thibet*^m, and keep the Title and Honours of King. *That he should be put in peaceable Possession of the Principality of Tatta*ⁿ, to enjoy it during his Life, and that after his Death, that Principality should be united in full Sovereignty

^e Germany. ^f The Archduchesses. ^g France. ^h The King of Spain. ⁱ Sardinia. ^k Vienna. ^l Stanislaus. ^m Poland. ⁿ Lorrain.

Sovereignty and for ever with the Crown of Persia. That Mahtoud's Son ° should be acknowledged King of Thibet by Chekour, and by all the Powers engaged in this War. That in order to indemnify the Prince of Tatta for the Sacrifice he made of his own Dominions for the Sake of Peace, he should have the Principality of Aracam p. That the Son of the Emperor of China q should be crowned King of Cochin-china r and of the Countries dependent on it. That the King of Necbal s should have the Territory of Ava and its Dependencies t. That all the Conquests made by Persia in the Mogol's Dominions should be restored to him, except some Domains, the Property of which was yielded unto Persia. Finally, that Persia should be Guarantee of the famous Edict u by which the Mogol had settled the Succession to the Hereditary Dominions of his Family.

Such were the Events and the Conclusion of a War, out of which *Cha-Resinc-Frola* w, being reduced to the greatest Extremities, found Means happily to extricate himself, at the Expence of the Princes of *Tatta* and *Aracam* x: For the Sacrifice he made of the Kingdom of *Cochin-china*, and of the Territory of *Ava*, and their Dependencies, was less a Sacrifice, than a Necessity laid upon the Vanquished; since the *Chinese* y had entirely subdued *Cochin-china*, to the greatest Part of which they had ever a Claim; and since on the other Side, the Kings of *Necbal* and *Persia* were Masters, not only of *Ava*, but also of the best Provinces of the Empire, which are

E 2

situated

° King Augustus II. Elector of Saxony. p Tuscany.
q King of Spain. r Naples. s Sardinia. t Part of the Milanese. u The Pragmatic Sanction. w The Emperor Charles VI. x The Dukes of Lorraine and Tuscany. y Spaniards.

situated about the *Ganges* ^z. And besides, the Countries which the *Mogol* gave up, were fully ballanced by the Generosity of *Persia*, who restored to him all the Conquests she had made, and by the Dominions, the full Property of which was given up to him by this Treaty: A more sure Title than his pretended Right to the Dominions he yielded.

As soon as these Articles were signed, in which every Power, and especially the *Grand Mogol* found their Account; this Prince applied himself to the Conclusion of the Marriage of his eldest Daughter *Nagar* ^a, with *Narsic*, Prince of *Aracam* ^b. But *Cha-Reffinc-Frola* ^c, who still hoped to have a Son and Heir, obliged the new-married Couple to renounce the Crown of *Mogol*, in case a Son should be born to him: and it was stipulated by the same Deed, that in case *Nagar* had no Male Children, and her Sister *Remana* ^d should have any, these, to the Exclusion of *Nagar's* Daughters, should alone have a Right to succeed to the Hereditary Estates of the *Mogol*, to which *Nagar*, as to what regarded herself personally, should never lay any Claim.

Cosrou ^e, who could not be refused the Glory of procuring to *Cha-Sephi*, and to his Allies, very great Advantages by this Peace, was using all his Endeavours to make *Persia* reap the Fruits of his Labours, when he was put out of Favour at Court. He was charged with giving up,

^z Italy.
gary, &c.

^a The Archduchess. now Queen of Hungary, &c.

^b The Duke of Lorraine.

^c The

Emperor Charles VI.

^d The Archduchess Marianna, who afterwards married Prince Charles of Lorraine.

^e Chauvelin.

up, by the Treaty of *Gehanabad*^f, the Interest of the Allies to the Emperor of *Mogol*, and with not making him conclude the Peace upon the hardest Terms; Terms, which that Prince, who was beaten every where, would have been forced to accept, unless he had been determined to lose all. That Minister was also accused of having received immense Sums as the Price of so great a Service. It was even said, that *Chasephi* himself had warned *Ismael-Beg*^g, to watch the Conduct of *Cofrou*, telling him, that he was well informed that he abused the Trust reposed in him: But the *Athemadoulet* being prepossessed in Favour of a Man, who was his Creature, and whose Knowledge was become necessary to him, justified him continually, and ascribed to Envy alone the envenomed Strokes that were levelled against him. At last, whether it was that convincing Proofs had been found of that Minister's Treacherousness, or that *Ismael-Beg* judged it was impossible for him to support him any longer, *Cofrou* was taken up, and confined to a strong Castle, where no Person whatsoever, not even of his own Family, was suffered to see him: Too mild a Punishment for so great a Crime, if there were Proofs of it, but too severe for a mere Suspicion! It is even extremely probable, that no sufficient Proofs could be found against him, since his Confinement did not continue long, and he was removed to the Capital City of a Province in the Kingdom, where, enjoying that Liberty, which is indulged to a Man who is no State-Criminal, he saw his Family, returned the Visits that were made to him, wrote and received Let-

^f Vienna.^g Cardinal De Fleury.

situated about the *Ganges* ^z. And besides, the Countries which the *Mogol* gave up, were fully ballanced by the Generosity of *Persia*, who restored to him all the Conquests she had made, and by the Dominions, the full Property of which was given up to him by this Treaty: A more sure Title than his pretended Right to the Dominions he yielded.

As soon as these Articles were signed, in which every Power, and especially the *Grand Mogol* found their Account; this Prince applied himself to the Conclusion of the Marriage of his eldest Daughter *Nagar* ^a, with *Narsic*, Prince of *Aracam* ^b. But *Cha-Ressinc-Frola* ^c, who still hoped to have a Son and Heir, obliged the new-married Couple to renounce the Crown of *Mogol*, in case a Son should be born to him: and it was stipulated by the same Deed, that in case *Nagar* had no Male Children, and her Sister *Remiana* ^d should have any, these, to the Exclusion of *Nagar's* Daughters, should alone have a Right to succeed to the Hereditary Estates of the *Mogol*, to which *Nagar*, as to what regarded herself personally, should never lay any Claim.

Cosfrou ^e, who could not be refused the Glory of procuring to *Cha-Sephi*, and to his Allies, very great Advantages by this Peace, was using all his Endeavours to make *Persia* reap the Fruits of his Labours, when he was put out of Favour at Court. He was charged with giving up,

^z Italy. ^a *The Archduchess, now Queen of Hungary, &c.* ^b *The Duke of Lorrain.* ^c *The Emperor Charles VI.* ^d *The Archduchess Marianna, who afterwards married Prince Charles of Lorrain.* ^e *Chauvel n.*

up, by the Treaty of *Gehanabad*^f, the Interest of the Allies to the Emperor of *Mogol*, and with not making him conclude the Peace upon the hardest Terms; Terms, which that Prince, who was beaten every where, would have been forced to accept, unless he had been determined to lose all. That Minister was also accused of having received immense Sums as the Price of so great a Service. It was even said, that *Chasepi* himself had warned *Ismael-Beg*^g, to watch the Conduct of *Cofrou*, telling him, that he was well informed that he abused the Trust reposed in him: But the *Athemadoulet* being prepossessed in Favour of a Man, who was his Creature, and whose Knowledge was become necessary to him, justified him continually, and ascribed to Envy alone the envenomed Strokes that were levelled against him. At last, whether it was that convincing Proofs had been found of that Minister's Treacherousness, or that *Ismael-Beg* judged it was impossible for him to support him any longer, *Cofrou* was taken up, and confined to a strong Castle, where no Person whatsoever, not even of his own Family, was suffered to see him: Too mild a Punishment for so great a Crime, if there were Proofs of it, but too severe for a mere Suspicion! It is even extremely probable, that no sufficient Proofs could be found against him, since his Confinement did not continue long, and he was removed to the Capital City of a Province in the Kingdom, where, enjoying that Liberty, which is indulged to a Man who is no State-Criminal, he saw his Family, returned the Visits that were made to him, wrote and received

Let-

^f Vienna.

^g Cardinal De Fleury.

Letters. Such was the Fate of an able Man, whose Fate was owing perhaps to a little Imprudence, but chiefly to the Credit of the Enemies of the Family of *Mirza-Haddi* ^h, who supported him, rather than to any Want of Honesty clearly proved.

Tamel ⁱ succeeded him in Post of First Secretary of State, and that of Keeper of the *Sophi's* Seals was given again to old *Ibrahim* ^k, who had been deprived of it above sixteen Years.

Tamel, descended from a Family famous for politick Knowledge, had been long in such Employments as relate to the Finances, for which he was more proper than for the Post to which he was raised, and in which he did not make the best Figure in the World. He had Wit, was laborious, quick, ambitious and jealous. He stuttered, which is a considerable Defect in a Man, who is obliged to confer daily with Foreign Ministers. To assist him in the difficult Functions of his Office, he had the Good-luck to meet with excellent Under-officers, who had a long time performed the particular Parts of it, and who were perfectly acquainted with the Interests of *Persia* and of all the Foreign Powers. These Under-ministers, who are less exposed than the Great Ministers, to the Strokes of Envy, and are so much the less in Danger of being removed, that their Places cannot be filled up but by Men of a very great Capacity, which cannot be acquired but by a long Experience; these, I say, are properly the Men of the State; the Ministers are changed, but they die in their Post. It seems therefore that a Minister ought to

^h *The Duke of Bourbon.* ⁱ *M. Amelot.* ^k *M. D'Aguesseau.*

to have some Regard for them, and look upon them in a Manner as his Seconds. But *Tamel* who was proud, jealous of his Rank, and who also bore a Grudge to one of these Men, because he had enjoy'd *Cofrou's* Confidence, laboured to ruin him. In order to play the surest Game, he charged him with keeping a suspicious Correspondence, especially with *Cofrou*, and with refusing to discover to him Secrets, which very much concerned the State, and with which, said he, that Man was acquainted. Without any other Examination, that Man was taken up, and so closely confined, that even his Wife was not able to get leave to see him. Though so severe a Treatment might give Room to think that he was guilty, yet his Loyalty and Honesty were so universally known, that he was not even suspected of the slightest Fault, and his Misfortune was imputed only to the Jealousy and bad Character of *Tamel*, whose Reputation suffered thereby very much, both with Strangers, and with his own Nation.

Soon after *Cofrou* was dismissed, *Ismael-Beg* thought of leaving the Helm, and persuaded the *Sophi* to make Choice of *Sevagi*¹ to fill his Place: It was impossible to make a better Choice, with regard to Honesty, Zeal for the Good of the State, and an excellent Judgment; and these are Qualities most essentially requisite in a Statesman; and perhaps the only Qualifications that are to be minded; as for the labouring Part, and the particular Detail of Affairs, it is well known that a Minister is always surrounded with Persons, who desire nothing more than to spare him that Trouble. It seems

E 4

there-

¹ *The Count of Toulouse.*

therefore sufficient for a Minister to be honest, to love his Country, to have fixed and certain Views, and above all a clear Head, and a sound and accurate Judgment; now these were Qualifications, which *Sevagi* could not without Injustice be denied.

This Prince was born lazy, and was now of an Age in which Men think of taking some Rest, rather than engaging in Business; and besides, his Health, which was a little impaired, and the Death of his Brother *Soliman*^m, which happened about a Year before this, made him make serious Reflexions; so that he resisted for a great while the strenuous and repeated Sollicitations of *Ismael-Beg*, and even of *Cha-Sepbi*ⁿ. But as he loved the *Sophi* most tenderly, and could not, without Ingratitude, refuse him that Proof of his entire Devotion to him, he yielded. Measures were taken to declare him *Athemadoulet*^o, at a Country-Seat twelve Leagues distant from *Ispahan*^p, where *Cha-Sepbi* was to spend Part of the latter Season with his whole Court. But how Providence sports with the Projects of weak mortal Men! *Sevagi*, who about twenty Years before this Time had undergone the Operation for the Stone, and who since two or three Years felt some Pain in his Bladder, which made him fear the Return of that dreadful Distemper, made use of Remedies, which seemed to give him some Ease, and were in Effect nothing but Palliatives. When the *Sophi*'s Departure was at hand, *Sevagi* had more violent and more frequent Fits than usual, which were attended with Symptoms of a bad Omen. His Family and Friends

were

^m *The Duke of Maine* ⁿ *Cardinal De Fleury and Lewis XV.* ^o *Prime Minister.* ^p *Paris.*

were
fician
Surge
Ispan
Patien
pared
Sevagi
probe
per w
cerate
of th
the
thou
vagi
his st
had l
Euro
prov
quen
as T
cum
nine
ill, a
tinu
with
was
and
Ever
tion
stan
Son
he g
Zeli
Wi
his

were justly alarm'd. The most famous Physicians were called, together with an *European*^a Surgeon, who happened luckily to be then at *Ispanan*. They examined the Condition of the Patient with all the Care possible; they compared the present Symptoms with those which *Sevagi* had had before; the *European* Surgeon probed him. The Result was that the Distemper was lodged in the Urethra, which was ulcerated, and that in order to stop the Progress of the Distemper, and prevent certain Death, the Operation was to be undertaken, which, though dangerous, it was not questioned but *Sevagi* would go through very well, considering his strong Constitution and the regular Life he had led. This Prince resolved upon it, and the *European* Surgeon made the Operation, which proved as happy as could be wish'd, the Consequences of it gave even so much the more Hope, as Time was gained thereby, a most essential Circumstance in that kind of Distempers. But the nineteenth Day in the Morning *Sevagi* was very ill, and fell into a total *Syncope*, which continued twenty-four Hours, and was attended with frequent convulsive Motions. Since that he was plainly perceived to grow worse and worse, and died at last the twenty-second Day in the Evening, having, from the Moment the Operation was made, bore with a wonderful Constancy the most acute Pains. He left but one Son thirteen Years old, to whom before he died he gave the most noble and useful Instructions. *Zelida* was very well provided for by his last Will, by which he also ordered Rewards to all his Servants proportionable to their Condition

E 5

and

^a This is only a *Blind* to mislead the Reader.

82 The SECRET HISTORY

and Services. His Death was univerſally lamented, and deſerved it ; *Zelida* eſpecially was inſoluble.

Cha-Sephi ^r ſent every Day to know how *Sevagi* did, and all the *Grande*es, by Inclination, as much as to pay their Court to the *Sophi*, followed his Example. The nineteenth Day, which, as we have obſerved, proved ſo dangerous, *Daltemo* came in the Morning from *Cha-Sephi*, and being ordered to ſee *Sevagi*, he deſired to be introduced to him. They acquainted *Ibbi* ^s with it, who was with *Sevagi*. He imagined that by mentioning to him an Expreſs from the *Sophi*, it might occaſion a great Emotion in the Soul, and put the Spirits in Motion again. With this Hope he drew near *Sevagi*, and told him in a loud Voice, that *Daltemo* deſired to ſee him, being ſent by *Cha-Sephi* for that Purpoſe, but that conſidering the Condition he was in, he was going to receive him himſelf. *Sevagi*, as tho' awaking from a ſound Sleep, ſaid to *Ibbi*, that ſuch a Meſſenger was to be received by himſelf, and ordered *Daltemo* to be brought in. He enters accordingly, and acquaints *Sevagi* with the *Sophi*'s Uneaſineſs upon his Account. *Sevagi*, with a Preſence of Mind which aſtoniſhed all thoſe who knew what Condition he had juſt been in, deſires *Daltemo* to preſent his moſt humble Reſpects to *Cha-Sephi*, and to aſſure him of his Gratitude and Fidelity : He charges him alſo to give his tender Compliments to *Iſmael-Beg* ^t, to whom he particularly recommends his Son and *Zelida*. *Daltemo* was ſcarce

^r Lewis XV.
dinal De Fleuri.

^s *Marſhal De Noailles.*

^t *Car-*

gone,
and v
ble t
whol
whic
love
dear
preſſi
in a
Se
Iſma
'Tho
the
vice.
State
Seva
Frien
gave
curin
of th
ploy
Seph
ever
his
the
Soph
cula
offe
van
der
an
Ple
thy
tio

gone, but this Prince fell again into a *Syncope*, and whatever could be done, it was not possible to make him recover his Senses during that whole Day. A most extraordinary Particular, which leaves no room to doubt but *Sevagi* loved the *Sophi* most tenderly, and that so dear a Name made on his Soul so strong an Impression as made the Spirits of the Blood revive in a Moment.

Sevagi's Death disappointed all *Cha-Sephi* and *Ismael-Beg's* Projects. The latter gave over all Thoughts of Retirement, in order to devote the Remainder of his Days to his Master's Service. But his Application to the Affairs of the State did not make him lose sight of young *Sevagi*^u, he continued to him that tender Friendship he had vowed to his Father, and gave him most effectual Proofs of it, by procuring to him, notwithstanding the Endeavours of the Jealous and the Opposers, all the Employments his Father was possessed of. *Cha-Sephi*, faithful to *Sevagi's* Memory, continued even for two Years to honour his Castle with his Presence. But as we have already observed the Disgust, which *Nargum* gave to some of the *Sophi's* Attendants, for whom he had a particular Friendship, and the Opportunity which offered, to make him buy a Country Seat advantageously situated on the Banks of the *Zonderon*, a few Miles distant from *Ispahan*^w, put an End to those Journeys.

The *Sophi* gave himself intirely over to the Pleasure of rendering that Seat a Place worthy a Sovereign. He made considerable Additions to all the Buildings which were not large enough.

^u The Count of Toulouse's Son:

^w Paris.

enough. They admired chiefly a little Appartment contrived over that of *Cha-Sephi*, with which it had a Communication by a back Stairs. This was the Favourite's Appartment. The Delicacy of the Sculpture, the Gold and Azure that glistened every where, the best contrived Furniture, and many beautiful Looking-Glasses advantageously situated, heighten'd the Plainness of that Appartment, and gave it a genteel Air, that struck the Beholder with Pleasure. In a word, the Invention of Art had been stretched to the utmost, for the Conveniency, good Taste, and Genteelness of this Seat. One of *Cha-Sephi*'s Favourites, named *Kigon*^x, Son of *Seif*, was Steward of that Seat, to which the *Sophi* went frequently, in Company with *Retima*^y, and those Persons of his Court, whom he honoured with his Familiarity. This Place became very soon as famous, as the little Recesses in the Palace of *Ispahan*, and was more agreeable by its rural and solitary Situation, which could be enjoy'd every Moment.

Mirza-Haddi^z, died about this Time, and was soon followed by *Osman*^a, who had the Management of War Affairs. The latter was succeeded by *Ibben*^b, who had enjoyed that Post before him after the Removal of the unfortunate *Akabar*^c.

That same Year the *Usbecks*^d of *Zagathay* lost their King, a Prince about fifty two Years old, who, by his regular Life, and strong Constitution seemed to promise a longer Life. He was the second King of that Country. His
Father

^x *Marshal de Coigni's Son.* ^y *Mad. de Mailli.*

^z *The Duke of Bourbon.* ^a *M. D'Angervilliers.*

^b *M. de Bretueil.* ^c *M. Le Blanc.* ^d *The Prussians.*

Father *Raja* of *Attock*^c, in the Dominions of the *Mogul*, having powerfully assisted with his Troops *Cha-Poledol*^f, then Emperor of *Mogul*, and engaged in a dangerous War, obtained from him in return that *Zagathay*, of which he was Sovereign, should be erected into a Kingdom.

The Prince, of whose Death we are speaking, was of middling Size, somewhat clumsy; he used to dress very plain, or rather without any Ceremony, and lived after the same manner. He was Covetous, made no Expence but for the Maintenance of his Army, of which he constantly kept a numerous Body. He would have very tall Men, and spared nothing to get them. He spent his Time in Reviews and in Hunting; was absolute, and little beloved by his Subjects, and even by his own Children, whom he used with great Severity. For the rest he loved to live in a good Understanding with his Neighbours, engaged in no War, but for the strongest Reasons, had a great deal of good Sense, and understood perfectly well his true Interest.

He left his Dominions, and immense Treasures to *Gion-Kan*^g, his eldest Son, aged about twenty-nine Years. The *Usbecks* were exceedingly pleased to see the Crown on the Head of a Prince, whom they tenderly loved, and of whom they had conceived the more flattering Hopes, as they knew that he had often blamed his Father's Rigour and Avarice. His Mind was extremely cultivated, but a little too much turned to Dialectics. He employed his Time usefully,

^c *Elector of Brandenburg.* ^f *The Emperor Leopold.*
^g *Frédéric III. the present King of Prussia.*

usefully, and loved Men of Letters. Before he ascended the Throne he was affable, sweet-tempered, obliging and generous: Yet he was hardly seated upon it, but all those fine Qualities vanished away: He shewed himself an ambitious King, a dangerous Politician, an unsafe Ally, a turbulent Neighbour, a cruel Master; in a word, he was more Proud and Ambitious than his Father, and less generous still.

In the mean time *Persia*^h, was intirely taken up with the Marriage of the *Sophi*'s eldest Daughter with a Sonⁱ of the Emperor of *China*^k. It was celebrated with the greatest Pomp and Magnificence. The most agreeable Entertainments, the most splendid Spectacles, triumphal Arches, adorned with Emblems and Inscriptions, the most sumptuous Feasts succeeded each other by turns, and were for several Days the Amusement of the Court, and the City, and the Admiration of Foreigners, who had flocked thither from all Parts of *Asia*^l, to be Partakers of those Entertainments.

The Princess was but thirteen Years old, extremely lovely, and very fair. To a charming Sweetness, which won her every Heart, she added a noble Air, which struck the Beholders with Awe. She became the Darling of the *Chinese*, as she had been of the *Persians*. The Prince was twenty Years old, and nothing inferior to his Consort, with regard to the Charms of his Person and Qualities of his Mind.

Asia

^h France. ⁱ Don Philip. ^k The King of Spain.
^l Europe.

Asia gave then all her Attention to the War which had been lately declared between *Gelaladdin*, Emperor of *China*^m, and *Chanawas Kan* Emperor of *Japan* and *Raja* of *Cabul*, on account of considerable Sums which these Princes demanded reciprocally of each other, and of some pretended Infractions of Treaties. But this was only the Pretence of the Rupture; the true Cause was to deprive the *Japonefe* of the Liberty which had been granted them to trade in the Dominions of *China*, (a Liberty which they were charged to have abused) and to diminish their Power, which was already too great, by draining the Spring of those immense Riches they had gained by that Trade. The Charge, which the Emperor of *China* laid upon the *Japonefe* was not intirely groundless. They, being powerful by Sea, and of a Genius very proper for Trade, had for a long time wished to have a free Access into the Ports of *China*; they were so much the more desirous to obtain it, as they knew that *Gelaladdin*, would not grant it but with great Difficulty. They took such Measures, that they came to their End, at least in Part: For *Gelaladdin*, who feared less, by giving them an indefinite Privilege, he would increase their Power, which gave already great Jealousies to most of the Courts of *Asia*, reduced that Priviledge to one single Ship. The *Japonefe* were cunning enough to make the best Advantage of it, by sending into *China* so large a Ship, that its Cargo was equivalent to that of several ordinary Vessels; and to make amends for the narrow Bounds, within which the Emperor

^m Philip V. King of Spain.

ror of *China* thought to have confined his Privileges, they had the Precaution, when the Ship was coming back, to keep other Vessels at hand to meet it, and into which they unloaded the Cargo of the large Vessels, which by that Means could make in a very little time several Voyages to *China*. And indeed, one may say, that it was constantly seen there; for it was hardly got out of the Harbours, but it entered them again. The *Chinese* opened their Eyes at last, and saw they had been bit by the *Japoneſe*; and in order to punish them for their Dishonesty, or rather for their Ability, *Gelaleddin* would recal his Privilege. The Court of *Japan* used all her Endeavours to ward off that Blow. After many useleſs Attempts the *Japoneſe* judged, that rather than suffer the Affront *Gelaleddin* wanted to do them, it was more expedient to endeavour, powerful as they were, to keep by force of Arms an Advantage, which let the worst come to the worst, they could but lose.

Such was the Motive of that War, on the Event of which all *Asia* had her Eye, when News was brought of the Death of *Cha-Reſſinc-Frola*, Emperor of *Mogul*°. This Prince, who was the thirteenth ſucceſſive Emperor of his Family, ſaw his Houſe extinct with him. He was but fifty-five Years old when he died, twenty-nine of which he had lived on the Throne, almoſt conſtantly at War. He had inherited all the Pride, Ambition, and domineering Spirit of his Family. His Policy was refined, his Hatred againſt *Persia* implacable, his Temper dull and melancholy, his Character milder than his

° *The late Emperor Charles VI.*

his Pro
ment
rors
witho
Counc
He w
He ha
Head
afterw
he ha
certain
someti
experie
used t
Life o
to be l
ry pro
A Sev
rally ſp
the ne
Camp
that a
ſome M
His
which
Time.
ed wit
left by
four Y
racam
As he
ſhort,
Succes
ly give

° Eli
Duke of

his Predecessor's, but arbitrary, and his Government severe, a Fault common to all the Emperors of that Family. His Court was stately without being gay. He could not bear such Councils as did not suit with his Notions: He was neither generous nor compassionate. He had given Proofs of his Courage at the Head of Armies, before he was Emperor; but afterwards, he made War only from his Closet; he had forgot that the Success of Arms is uncertain, and that Fortune, an inconstant Goddess, sometimes frowns upon the bravest and most experienced Warrior. From that Principle, he used to punish unmercifully, with the Loss of Life or Liberty, a General who suffered himself to be beaten. A Policy this, which is not very proper to form Officers of the first Rank! A Severity so much the more unjust, as, generally speaking, the Orders from the Court, for the necessary Expeditions or Operations of the Campaign, were so slow, or so ill executed, that a General could hardly expect not to suffer some Misfortune.

His Death was occasioned by an Indigestion, which carried him to the Grave in eight Days Time. He had been thirty-three Years married with *Selatibeb*, Princess of *Vrisknub*^p, and left by her but two Daughters, *Nagar* who four Years before his Death married Prince *A-racam*^q, and *Remana*, who was still unmarried. As he did not foresee that his Life would be so short, he had taken no Measures to settle the Succession to his Imperial Crown. He had only given Hints of his favourable Dispositions to-
wards

^p Elizabeth, Princess of Brünswick.
Duke of Tuscany.

^q The Grand

ror of *China* thought to have confined his Privileges, they had the Precaution, when the Ship was coming back, to keep other Vessels at hand to meet it, and into which they unloaded the Cargo of the large Vessels, which by that Means could make in a very little time several Voyages to *China*. And indeed, one may say, that it was constantly seen there ; for it was hardly got out of the Harbours, but it entered them again. The *Chinese* opened their Eyes at last, and saw they had been bit by the *Japoneſe* ; and in order to punish them for their Dishonesty, or rather for their Ability, *Gelaleddin* would recal his Privilege. The Court of *Japan* used all her Endeavours to ward off that Blow. After many useleſs Attempts the *Japoneſe* judged, that rather than suffer the Affront *Gelaleddin* wanted to do them, it was more expedient to endeavour, powerful as they were, to keep by force of Arms an Advantage, which let the worst come to the worst, they could but lose.

Such was the Motive of that War, on the Event of which all *Asia* had her Eye, when News was brought of the Death of *Cha-Reſſinc-Frola*, Emperor of *Mogul* °. This Prince, who was the thirteenth successive Emperor of his Family, saw his House extinct with him. He was but fifty-five Years old when he died, twenty-nine of which he had lived on the Throne, almost constantly at War. He had inherited all the Pride, Ambition, and domineering Spirit of his Family. His Policy was refined, his Hatred against *Persia* implacable, his Temper dull and melancholy, his Character milder than
his

° *The late Emperor Charles VI.*

his Pr
ment
rors
witho
Coun
He w
He h
Head
afterw
he ha
certain
somet
experi
used t
Life o
to be
ry pro
A Sev
rally s
the ne
Camp
that a
some l
His
which
Time
ed wi
left b
four Y
racam
As he
short,
Succes
ly give

P Eli
Duke o

his Predecessor's, but arbitrary, and his Government severe, a Fault common to all the Emperors of that Family. His Court was stately without being gay. He could not bear such Councils as did not suit with his Notions: He was neither generous nor compassionate. He had given Proofs of his Courage at the Head of Armies, before he was Emperor; but afterwards, he made War only from his Closet; he had forgot that the Success of Arms is uncertain, and that Fortune, an inconstant Goddess, sometimes frowns upon the bravest and most experienced Warrior. From that Principle, he used to punish unmercifully, with the Loss of Life or Liberty, a General who suffered himself to be beaten. A Policy this, which is not very proper to form Officers of the first Rank! A Severity so much the more unjust, as, generally speaking, the Orders from the Court, for the necessary Expeditions or Operations of the Campaign, were so slow, or so ill executed, that a General could hardly expect not to suffer some Misfortune.

His Death was occasioned by an Indigestion, which carried him to the Grave in eight Days Time. He had been thirty-three Years married with *Selatibeb*, Princess of *Vrisknub* ^p, and left by her but two Daughters, *Nagar* who four Years before his Death married Prince *Aracam* ^q, and *Remana*, who was still unmarried. As he did not foresee that his Life would be so short, he had taken no Measures to settle the Succession to his Imperial Crown. He had only given Hints of his favourable Dispositions to-
wards

^p Elizabeth, Princess of Brunswick.
Duke of Tuscany.

^q The Grand

wards his Son-in-Law, and shewed some Intentions to have him appointed his Successors: For which Purpose he had founded the *Rajabs*^r, but without taking any formal Resolution.

He was of the House of *Delly*^s, which since three Centuries was in Possession of the Crown of *Mogul*, and he had rendered it in a Manner Hereditary, though, by its Constitution, it be Elective. A Policy always the same, several great Kingdoms, and many Sovereignities, which from Time to Time come to that House, some by a Right of Succession, others which she appropriated to herself as she saw her Authority increase; some also by Conquest, others by Treaties, had raised that Family to so high a Degree of Power, that the whole Empire trembled before it, especially under the three last Emperors; and that in the Assemblies that were convened for taking Resolutions concerning the General Affairs, none dared to Vote but according to their Orders. Publick Liberty groaned under a Yoke of Arbitrary Power, so much the more unjust and odious, as those Emperors were not unacquainted with the Laws and Constitution of the State; and, in Defiance of the most sacred Oaths, by which, before their Coronation, they had been bound towards the whole Body of the Empire, they applied themselves daily, to evade the Conventions, or put a wrong Construction upon them.

The Kingdom of *Golconda*^t was rendered Hereditary by *Cha-Poledol*^u, who in his Presence caused his Son to be crowned King of it in an Assembly he had called together in the Capital City,

^r *The Electors.* ^s *Austria.* ^t *Hungary.* ^u *The Emperor Leopold.*

City
Auth
had
Cent
bitra
the
obsti
and
condi
Priv
Mar
whic
And
priv
ther
did
the
of C
the
erec
S
abso
Aut
par
Titl
be e
dom
out
up t
Priv
auth
ries
the

w
y Pr

City, for Form's Sake only, since by his own Authority he abolished the Formalities, which had been constantly practised, for above seven Centuries, in the Election of Kings. This arbitrary Proceeding made the greatest Part of the Kingdom rise in Arms, and occasioned an obstinate War, which continued several Years, and the Conclusion of which was, that the *Golcondians* lost entirely their Liberty, and all their Priviledges. This Prince treated after the same Manner the Principality of *Balaguata* ^w, of which he also made an Hereditary Province. And by the same despotick Authority he deprived a *Raja* ^x of his Dignity, and created another beyond the usual Number, both which he did without the Participation and Consent of the States of the Empire, to whom the Right of Creation, and of Deprivation belongs by the Laws: Finally, by his own Authority he erected *Zagathay* ^y into a Kingdom.

Seipho ^z, who succeeded him, and was more absolute still, and more determined to excel his Authority, considered the Kingdom of *Jenupar* ^a as an Hereditary Estate, and assumed the Title of King of it, without causing himself to be elected or crowned by the States of the Kingdom, who acknowledged him nevertheless without any Protestation, and seemed thus to give up the Priviledge of electing their Kings; a Priviledge however which was confirmed by an authentic Edict made since above four Centuries, and was esteemed a fundamental Law of the Empire. This Prince did also proscribe in his

^w Transilvania. ^x An Elector, viz. the Palatine.
^y Prussia. ^z The Emperor Joseph. ^a Bohemia.

wards his Son-in-Law, and shewed some Intentions to have him appointed his Successors: For which Purpose he had founded the *Rajabs*^r, but without taking any formal Resolution.

He was of the House of *Delly*^s, which since three Centuries was in Possession of the Crown of *Mogul*, and he had rendered it in a Manner Hereditary, though, by its Constitution, it be Elective. A Policy always the same, several great Kingdoms, and many Sovereignties, which from Time to Time come to that House, some by a Right of Succession, others which she appropriated to herself as she saw her Authority increafe; some also by Conquest, others by Treaties, had raised that Family to so high a Degree of Power, that the whole Empire trembled before it, especially under the three last Emperors; and that in the Assemblies that were convened for taking Resolutions concerning the General Affairs, none dared to Vote but according to their Orders. Publick Liberty groaned under a Yoke of Arbitrary Power, so much the more unjust and odious, as those Emperors were not unacquainted with the Laws and Constitution of the State; and, in Defiance of the most sacred Oaths, by which, before their Coronation, they had been bound towards the whole Body of the Empire, they applied themselves daily, to evade the Conventions, or put a wrong Construction upon them.

The Kingdom of *Golconda*^t was rendered Hereditary by *Cha-Poledol*^u, who in his Presence caused his Son to be crowned King of it in an Assembly he had called together in the Capital City,

^r *The Electors.* ^s *Austria.* ^t *Hungary.* ^u *The Emperor Leopold.*

City,
Auth
had
Centu
bitrar
the K
obstin
and th
condian
Privile
Mann
which
And
prived
ther b
did w
the St
of Cr
the L
erected
Seiz
absolu
Autho
par^a
Title
be elec
dom,
out an
up the
Privile
auther
ries, a
the El

^w *T*
^y *Prussia*

City, for Form's Sake only, since by his own Authority he abolished the Formalities, which had been constantly practised, for above seven Centuries, in the Election of Kings. This arbitrary Proceeding made the greatest Part of the Kingdom rise in Arms, and occasioned an obstinate War, which continued several Years, and the Conclusion of which was, that the *Golcondians* lost entirely their Liberty, and all their Priviledges. This Prince treated after the same Manner the Principality of *Balaguata* ^w, of which he also made an Hereditary Province. And by the same despotick Authority he deprived a *Raja* ^x of his Dignity, and created another beyond the usual Number, both which he did without the Participation and Consent of the States of the Empire, to whom the Right of Creation, and of Deprivation belongs by the Laws: Finally, by his own Authority he erected *Zagathay* ^y into a Kingdom.

Seipho ^z, who succeeded him, and was more absolute still, and more determined to excel his Authority, considered the Kingdom of *Jenupar* ^a as an Hereditary Estate, and assumed the Title of King of it, without causing himself to be elected or crowned by the States of the Kingdom, who acknowledged him nevertheless without any Protestation, and seemed thus to give up the Priviledge of electing their Kings; a Priviledge however which was confirmed by an authentic Edict made since above four Centuries, and was esteemed a fundamental Law of the Empire. This Prince did also proscribe in his

^w Transilvania.

^x An Elector, viz. the Palatine.

^y Prussia.

^z The Emperor Joseph.

^a Bohemia.

his Council the *Rajas* of *Multan* and *Visapour*^b, and a Price was set upon the Head of the latter. He tore in Pieces with his own Hands the Deed which his Father *Cha-Poledol* had caused to be drawn up for investing them with their Dignity; he threw the Bits of it on the Ground, trampled them under his Feet, seized upon their Dominions, which he treated as conquered Countries, caused the Children of the *Raja* of *Visipour* to be carried off, and shut up in a strong Place, and deprived them even of the Name of their Family. He usurped some Sovereignities from the lawful Heirs, sold others which did not belong to him, and exerted unheard of Outrages both within and without the Empire.

When *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*^c came to the Throne, he had no Manner of Regard to the repeated Sollicitation of the *Golcondians* for the Restoration of their Rights and Priviledges, and particularly to the Request they made, that for the future the Crown of *Golconda* might not descend to the feminine Branches of the Emperor's Family. He resolved to keep, and really kept for some Time the Dominions and Sovereignities of the *Rajas* of *Multan* and *Visapour*, which his Predecessor had invaded. He caused the *Raja*, whom his Father *Cha-Poledol* had created to be acknowledged; he engaged the Empire in Wars, in which he alone was personally concerned: Finally he made that great Body swear to the Execution of the Decree, by which, two Years after his Accession to the Imperial Crown, he had judged proper to settle the Order of Succession of his Kingdoms, Dominions, Possessions,

^b *The Electors of Cologne and Bavaria.* ^c *The Emperor Charles VI.*

Posses
Famil
caused
and w
by me

Th
the pu
cable
Cha-I
Male-
and C
ways
Provi
Separ
ther I
third,
what
and C
kept
Times
cession
minio

Th
besid
the P
gala,
guata
great
Imm
ter
and
of al
mini

c
f Th
many

Possessions, and other hereditary Estates of his Family; a Decree which by his Authority he caused to be admitted as a Law of the Empire, and which he had the Pleasure to see *guaranteed* by most of the Powers of *Asia* ^c.

That Decree, which was deposited amongst the public Records, as a perpetual and irrevocable Law, was to this Purpose: *That in Case Cha-Reffinc-Frola, should die without leaving any Male-Heirs, the eldest of his Daughters (the Right and Order of indivisible Primogeniture being always preserved) should succeed to all his Kingdoms, Provinces and Dominions, without any Division or Separation being ever made in Behalf of those, either Male or Female, who should be of the second, third, or last Branch, or Degree, or otherwise; for whatsoever Reason it might be, that same Right and Order of indivisible Primogeniture being to be kept in all the other Cases, and for ever, at all Times, and for all Ages equally, whenever the Succession to the hereditary Kingdoms, States and Dominions of that Emperor should happen to be open.*

This Prince's Succession was immensely large; besides the Kingdoms of *Golconda* and *Jenupar* ^d, the Principalities of *Delly* ^e, *Sembal*, *Bacar* and *Bengala*, he left also the States of *Candir*, *Balaguata*, *Telenga*, *Carnatica*, and *Patma* ^f, besides a great many other Countries and Dominions. Immediately after his Death, his eldest Daughter *Nagar* was proclaimed Queen of *Golconda* and *Jenupar*, Sovereign Princess of *Delly*, and of all her Father's hereditary Provinces and Dominions, according to the Order settled by the Decree

^c Europe. ^d Hungary and Bohemia. ^e Austria.

^f The other Dominions of the House of Austria in Germany, Italy, and the Low-Countries.

Decree we have been mentioning. She was acknowledged as such, not only in all her Dominions, but also by the *Rajas* ^g, and even by the greatest Part of *Asia*. The *Raja* of *Visapour* ^h alone refused to acknowledge her, on account of his Claim to the late Emperor's Succession, which he was resolved to assert, and which was grounded on ancient Family-Treaties, and on the last Will of the Emperor *Sepper Kan*, who had been dead near two hundred Years, and by which he had ordered, that *his eldest Daughter who should happen to be living at the Time the Succession became open, should succeed to the two Kingdoms of Golconda and Junapar, in case there remained no Heirs Male of any of the three Brothers of that Emperor.*

By another Clause of that Will, the Prince ordered, *that all his Hereditary Dominions of Delly, and their Dependencies, should, after the Extinction of his Male-Descendants, belong to his Brother and to his Heirs Male, who should be the only Heirs,—except that Daughter of his who should succeed to his Kingdoms and enjoy them.* And by a Codicil, made four Years after that Will, he confirms that Disposition, and declares expressly, *that in the Case in Question the Kingdoms of Golconda and Junapar, should be inherited by the eldest of his Daughters, who at that Time, should happen to be living.* This Emperor gave his eldest Daughter in Marriage to a *Raja* of *Visapour*, and it is from that Marriage, the present Family is descended, and on which it grounds its Claim to the Succession of *Cha Reffinc-Frota*. Princess *Nagqr* answered to this, that the Article of the last Will produced by the *Raja* of *Visapour*, did not agree with the Original, in which,

^g Electors.^h Bavaria.

which, instead of these Words, *in case there remained no Heirs Male*, there were the following, *in Case there remained no lawful Heirs* ; and that in Consequence to that Disposition, made agreeably to the Laws of Nature, and to all others, the Preference before any Person whatsoever, belonged to her, as being the eldest Daughter of the last surviving Male ; and that besides this, in Cases of a Succession, from which Women are not excluded, they are to be understood under the Name of Lawful Descendants.

There were some other Pretenders besides this: One was the King of *Necbal*ⁱ, who claimed the Principality of *Bengale*^k. Another was the Emperor of *China*^l, who grounded his Claim on a Family Contract, signed an Hundred and Twenty-three Years before, in the Capital City of the Kingdom of *Jenupar*, between the then reigning Emperors of *Mogul* and *China*, by which the latter yielded to the former, the eventual Succession to the States of *Bacar* and *Sambac*, and to several other Provinces, on Condition nevertheless, that in case the Masculine Line of the Emperor of *Mogul* should become extinct, the Dominions yielded to him should return to the Emperor of *China*, or to his Posterity, in such a Manner that his Daughters should inherit, and not those of the Emperor of *Mogul*, or their Descendants. Whence it was concluded, that the Princes and Princesses, descended from the Wife of *Cha-Abas* the Great^m, (who was herself descended from the Emperor of *China*, we are speaking of) had a Right to the Imperial Succession, before the Daughters of *Cha Poledol*ⁿ, and of his Successors.

The

ⁱ Sardinia. ^k Milan. ^l The King of Spain. ^m Lewis XIV. King of France. ⁿ The Emperor Leopold.

The King of *Zagathay*^p was also one of the Pretenders. He claimed, as *Raja* of *Attock*^q, an unquestionable Right of his Family to the Dominions and Country of *Bacar*^r, a Right grounded on ancient Family Treaties, and Associations between the *Rajas* of *Attock* and the Princes of *Bacar*, and also on other Reasons. In consequence of this Claim he entered at the Head of a numerous Army into the Province of *Bacar*, where he met with very little Resistance, because his Attempt being kept secret till the Moment it was executed, *Nagar*^s had not been able to put herself in a Condition to oppose him. All *Asia*^t was so much the more surprized at this Step, as this Prince had but just made to *Nagar* the strongest Protestations of his Devotion to her Interest, and of his sincere Dispositions to maintain the Tranquillity of the Empire. He thought he could sufficiently justify his Conduct, by declaring that the present Circumstances of Affairs, and the well-grounded Apprehension of being prevented by those who laid several Claims to the late Emperor's Succession, required so much Dispatch in the Undertaking, and so much Vigour in the Execution, that it was not possible for him to argue the Case previously with the Queen of *Golconda*; that his entering with an Army into the Province of *Bacar*, was with no other View, but to preserve it from any Attack or Invasion, by any of the Pretenders to the Imperial Succession, who might have seized upon it with open Force, at a Time when a general War seemed to be at hand; that for the rest, he did by no Means de-

^p Prussia. ^q Elector of Brandenburg. ^r Silesia. ^s The Queen of Hungary. ^t Europe.

sign to disoblige the Queen of *Golconda*, with whom on the contrary, he earnestly desired to keep up a strict Friendship, and to promote, with all his Power, her true Interest and Preservation.

Notwithstanding these fine Protestations, the King of *Zagathay* entered some Time after into an Alliance with *Persia*^u, and with the *Rajas* of *Visapour* and *Lahor*^v by a Treaty, which had no other Tendency but to dispossess the Queen of *Golconda* of all her Dominions, and the March of this Prince's Troops was the Signal of almost a general War, which was soon after kindled in *Asia*^x.

In the mean Time, the Choice of a Successor to *Cha-Reffinc-Frola*^y put all the Powers in *Asia* upon Action, especially *Persia*, whom it concerned very much that the Imperial Crown should not be bestowed but to a Prince almost entirely at her Disposal; and particularly that the *Raja* of *Visapour* should be elected, whose House had at all Times been in the Interest of the *Sophis*^z. The frequent Misfortunes, which the Alliance with *Persia* had drawn upon that House, and the Desolation still recent of its Dominions, did well deserve, that in this Occurrence *Cha-Sephi*^a should give effectual Proofs of his Gratitude and Devotion to *Cha-Bascan*^b, then *Raja* of *Visapour*. But before we relate what the *Sophi* did in Behalf of this Prince, it will not be improper to give some Account of the Empire of *Mogul*^c, of its Constitution and Laws,

^u France.

^w The Electors of Bavaria and Saxony.

^x Europe.

^y The Emperor Charles VI.

^z French

Kings. ^a Lewis XV. ^b The late Elector of Bavaria.

^c The Empire of Germany.

Laws, of its Condition and that of the Rest of *Asia*^b, at the Death of *Cha-Reffinc-Frola*.

That large and powerful Empire has been for a long Time Hereditary, and is now Elective. It contains several Dominions, governed by *Rajas*^c, subordinate indeed to the Emperor, but to whom belongs the Sovereignty of the Empire, in Conjunction with the *Omrahs*^d, and with some considerable and free Towns. The whole is composed of three Classes, which being united together form the Body of the Empire. This Body has a Right to determine all general Affairs that concern it, in Assemblies which meet for that Purpose. The Emperor alone has a Right to call them together, and to cause his Propositions to be made to it, by his Commissaries, whom he sends thither to preside there in his Place.

The Empire is divided into several large Provinces, the Princes of which, and the *Omrahs*, with the Deputies of the Cities, assemble at appointed Times for particular Affairs. These Provinces contribute towards the Support of the Empire, of which they are Members; they furnish Troops and Money in Proportion to what each of them is able to afford. These Contingents are designed only for the Service of the State in general, so that when the Emperor is engaged to carry on a War, which does not concern the whole Body, or which is not declared, in a full Assembly, to be a War of the Empire, he cannot demand these Contingents, nor require any Assistance from the Provinces, but is obliged to carry on alone, with
his

^b Europe.

^c Electors.

^d The College of the Princes.

his own Troops, and at his own Expence, a War which is considered as relating to him personally : It is for that Reason, that the *Rajas* are always careful not to put the Imperial Crown but on the Head of a Prince rich and powerful enough to support himself by his own Strength.

The *Rajas* who have a Right to elect the Emperor are those of *Guzarate*°, *Buckor*, *Multan*, *Jenupar*, *Visapour*, *Labor*, *Attock*, *Brampour*, and *Cabul*. Of these nine *Rajas* the three first have only an active Vote, that is to say, that they can elect, but cannot be elected ; differing in this from the six others, who have both an active and passive Vote, that is, who can elect and be elected. The Dignity of *Raja* and all that depends from it, is hereditary from Male to Male in the last six ; but as for the three first, the Dignity belongs only to the Person of him whom the *Grande*es of the Country do themselves raise to that Rank, a Privilege peculiar to the States of *Guzarate*, *Buckor* and *Multan* : but the Dignity of all of them is indivisibly connected with the Principality. Each of these *Rajas* enjoys a full Sovereignty in his own Dominions, and has a Right to make War, Alliances and Treaties, both within and without the Empire, with whomsoever he thinks proper, provided the Emperor, and the Empire jointly, receive no Prejudice from it.

When the Imperial Throne is vacant, it is the Province of the *Raja* of *Guzarate* to call together the other *Rajas*, in order to proceed to the Election of a Head of the Empire, which Election might be declared void, if through Inadvertency, or otherwise, he had omitted to

summon one of them. But in case the Emperor has a Mind to have his Successor appointed in his Life-time, the *Raja* of *Guzarate* cannot call the Assembly together, unless he be impowered by his Colleagues, who on this Occasion represent the whole Body of the Empire.

Amadabat^f, an Imperial City, is the Place where the Assemblies for the Election ought to be kept. He who is elected, must absolutely be of the Male Sex, and as much as is possible a *Mogolian*^g by Birth, or at least by Extraction, and of a proper Age. He must be a good Man, just, prudent, and brave; in a word, adorned with all the Virtues that can render him useful to the State; and finally, rich and powerful, that he may be able to support the Dignity of the Imperial Crown.

By virtue of the Edict of *Salcher IV.*^h, the *Rajas* ought to repair immediately to the Place of Election, or cause themselves to be represented there by Persons provided with full Powers from them; and if a *Raja* should neither go, nor send, he would lose, but for that Time only, the Right of giving his Vote. The Election must be made within one Moonⁱ, reckoning from the Time the *Rajas* have taken the Oath.

As soon as the Election is over, the Prince elect is made to subscribe the Conditions on which he is called to the Empire; and to swear to the Performance of them; after which they proclaim him. These Conditions contain the Precautions that are taken to limit his Power, and prevent

^f Francfort. ^g German. ^h Charles the Fourth's
Golden Bull. ⁱ Month.

prevent him from pretending to an hereditary Succession to the Empire, either for himself, or for his Heirs or Descendants, or for any Person whatsoever; and finally to maintain the Prerogatives of which the *Rajas* are in Possession, and the Rights and Liberties of the Empire. On the Day of his Coronation he is again obliged to swear, among other Things, that he will maintain the Rights, and recover the Estates of the Empire, and employ them faithfully for the publick Good.

According to the Laws and Constitution of the Empire, the Emperor cannot, without a general Consent of all the Estates, proscribe any *Raja*, *Omrah*, or immediate State, confiscate their Properties, deprive them of the Right of sitting and voting in the Assemblies, mortgage or alienate any thing belonging to the Empire, dispose of the chief vacant Fiefs, declare or make War, with or without the Empire, conclude a Peace or Alliance, nor do many other Things, which it would be tedious to mention. But, excepting all those Cases, he acts with a full Power, and with a Sovereign Authority.

At the Death of *Cha-Rassinc-Frola*, *Nabal-Akel-Kan*^{*}, descended from an ancient and noble Family, was *Raja* of *Guzarate*, a Dignity to which his Merit had raised him some Years before. His Office, which was the first in Rank among the *Rajas*, gave him a great Credit and Authority, which he used only for the Advantage of the Empire, to maintain Union and Concord among all its Members, and to procure to the State a worthy Chief. He had won the Esteem and Friendship of the late

F 3

Em-

^{*} The late Elector of Mentz.

Emperor, of the whole Empire, and even of *Persia*¹, with whom especially the Neighbourhood of his Dominions required him to live in a good Understanding. As he was no Warrior, he kept only a small Number of Troops for the Defence of his Towns. He was perfectly acquainted with the Interest of the Empire, and the Members of the Assemblies shewed so much Respect for his old Age, and trusted so much to his Experience, that they often submitted to his Opinions.

The *Raja* of *Buckor*^m, who held the second Rank, was called *Nali-Kan*. His noble Descent, and personal Qualities, had determined the *Grandees* of *Buckor* to chuse him; he was good-natured, and affable, and what Inclination soever he shewed for the House of *Delly*ⁿ, he generally gave pretty much into the Schemes of the *Raja* of *Guzarate*.

The third^o, named *Abdula-Kan*, was of the House of *Visapour*, and had succeeded one of his Uncles into the Dignity of *Raja* of *Multan*. He had a great and generous Soul, was munificent, zealous for the Interest of his House, and in a strict Union with his Brother the *Raja* of *Visapour*, which had made him sometimes oppose the Designs of the late Emperor, whose kind of Despotism these Princes could not well brook.

The fourth was the *Raja* of *Jenupar*^p, which Dignity *Cha-Ressinc-Frola* had been invested with as King of *Jenupar*, and which consequently was then vacant.

Cha-

¹ France. ^m Treves. ⁿ Austria.
Elect of Cologne. ^p Bohemia.

^o *The*

Cha-Baskan, *Raja* of *Visapour*^a, which Dignity his House had been in possession of above a Century, held the fifth Rank. This Prince was tall, had a long Face, pretty large Eyes, a sweet Countenance, a long Nose, and a pretty large Mouth. Upon the whole, he was not what might be called a handsome Man, but he had an excellent Heart, was very affable, of an amiable Character, and mild Temper. He was generous, grateful, constant in his Affections, and faithful to his Engagements. He was reckoned to have no great Skill in War, and but little Genius. Though the Alliance he had contracted with *Cha-Resfinc-Frola*, having married one of his Nieces, ought, it seems, to have engaged him in the Interest of the House of *Delly*, yet the Advantage of the Empire, his own private Interest, and the Resentment of the Severities that House had used against his Ancestors, had often made him side with the Party that declared against the late Emperor.

The sixth was the *Raja* of *Labor*^r, his Name was *Selim-Kan*, and he also had married a Niece of the late Emperor. This Prince was tall, and had an handsome Face; but he shrugged his Shoulders, and was extremely lusty for his Age. He was good-natured, magnificent, generous, and of an easy Access. Notwithstanding the Alliance he had made with *Persia*^s, the King of *Zagathay*^t, and the *Raja* of *Visapour*, he was more inclined to Peace, than to War; and though he had been of a quite opposite Character, yet his own Interest, considering

F 4

the

^a The late Elector of Bavaria afterwards Emperor
^r Saxony. ^s France. ^t Prussia.

the Situation of his Dominions, which bordered on those of the House of *Delly*, and the Inclination which the *Grande*es of his Kingdom of *Thibet*^u had for that House, obliged him to act with a great deal of Circumspection.

Gion-Kan, *Raja* of *Attock*^x, and King of *Zagathay*, held the seventh Rank. The Character of this Prince, which we have given above, and his Invasion of the Province of *Bakar*^y immediately after the Death of *Cha-Resfinc-Frola*, are sufficient to acquaint the Reader with his Policy, and real Sentiments towards the House of *Delly*. We shall only add, that this *Raja*, being elated with his Power, seemed to have forgot that *Cha-Poledol*^z had bestowed upon his Grand-father, the Title of King of *Zagathay*, and that he thought himself disengaged from all Ties of Gratitude for so ancient a Favour, which he imagined his two Predecessors had sufficiently acknowledged.

The eighth, was the *Raja* of *Brampour*^a; his Name was *Ast-Kan*. The Neighbourhood of *Persia*^b, which upon the least Discontent could invade his Dominions, and the Neighbourhood of the Dominions of the House of *Delly*^c obliged him to have great Regard for both these Powers, with whom it was his chief Interest to live in a good Understanding. Yet, in some Circumstances, and particularly during the War, which *Cha-Resfinc-Frola* sustained against *Persia*, the Emperor of *China*^d and the King of

^u Poland. ^x Brandenburg. ^y Si'esia. ^z The Emperor Leopold. ^a The *Elektor* Palatine. ^b France.
^c Austria. ^d The King of Spain.

of *Necbal**, he did not think himself under any Obligation to join with the Emperor, to whom that War was indeed personal.

———— of *Cabul* was reckoned ————.

Charavas-Kan, was the third of his Family, who enjoy'd that Dignity, which *Cha-Poledol* had by his own Authority erected in favour of *Katzem de Vrifknub*, Grand-father to him we are speaking of, with this extraordinary Condition, that neither he, nor any of his Descendants should ever give their Vote for the Election of an Emperor, but to a Prince of the House of *Delly*. And accordingly *Chanavas-Kan* was entirely devoted to that House, for the Support of which, after the Death of *Cha-Reffinc-Frola*, he made the greatest Efforts. This Prince's Alliance proved so much the more advantageous to the Queen of *Golconda*, that at his Sollicitation, the *Japonefe*, whose Emperor he was, did not only assist that Princess with considerable Sums, but even declared afterwards openly for her, a Step which they took so much the more readily, as it set them at Variance with *Persia*, whose Enemies they have been Time out of Mind. Perhaps, also it happened with the *Japonefe* in this Occurrence, as with a Creditor to whom a considerable Sum is due, and who thinks it proper to venture still more, in hopes of being at last entirely re-imbursed, or of seizing all his Debtor's Estates, or at least that Part of it, which lies most conveniently for him. However that be, it seems surprizing, that *Chanavas-Kan* could so easily persuade the *Japonefe*, who are known to be but little tractable, little

† 5

com-

* *The King of Sardinia.*

complaisant to their Masters, and jealous of their Liberty ; and who, besides, were not well pleased in general, with the Government of their Emperor, whose frequent Journies into his Principality of *Cabul*, they did not much like. However, this Prince was perhaps more absolute in his Aristo-democratical Empire, than any of his Predecessors had ever been, and had every Thing he could desire, granted to him. This was the Fruit of the Policy and Ability of his Ministers, who gave him all possible Authority in the second Class of the Senate, which is the most numerous, and in which they found Means to procure Seats to a great many Persons of Credit, who owing their Fortunes or their Employments to the Emperor, declared always for him, and carried every thing in their Deliberations, by their own Suffrages, and by those of the Members they won over, some by Threatnings, the greatest Part by the Expectation of Rewards. This Prince was rather short than tall, had a proud Aspect, and an Air not very engaging ; and though his Conduct was agreeable to good Policy, and the Interest of his Dominions, yet he was judged to have but little Genius. He did not much trouble himself with State Affairs, which, like a great many other Princes, he left to his Ministers. He often gave Discontents, even to his own Children, the eldest of whom was so much beloved by a great Number of *Japonese*, that he might have made a formidable Party, if he would have taken an Advantage of their Good-will, and hearken to the pernicious Counsels of Flatterers, during the Misunderstanding between his Father and him. *Chanavas-Kan* had some Inclination for the fair Sex,

Sex, and but little or none at all for what is great and noble. Though he shewed himself at the Head of his Armies, yet he was no Warrior. His Character was undetermined; he was neither brisk nor indolent, had neither Pride nor Gentleness of Temper; was sad rather than gay; his Court was less splendid by the Pleasures he procured it, and by the Expence he made, than by that of the *Japoneſe* Lords, who for the most Part, were very rich, and who all loved Splendour.

Besides these nine *Rajas*, there were also in the Empire several *Omrabs* ^e, whose Power caused their Alliance and Friendship to be courted, and several Free-Towns, which were not without some Credit. Upon the whole, the *Mogolians* ^f in general being tired with the Government of the House of *Delly* ^g, saw with Pleasure, that by the Death of *Cha-Reſſinc-Frola*, they came again into the Possession of their ancient Rights, and were now Masters to chuse themselves a Head, whom they might lay, for the Support of the publick Liberty, under such Laws and Restrictions, as they should think proper.

The Throne of *China* ^h was filled by *Gelaled-din* ⁱ, a Prince pretty much advanced in Years, and who, like the *Sophi* ^k, to whom he was very nearly related, did not love Business. He was kind, humane, and peaceable; and his Reign would have been one of the happiest, if he had not suffered himself to be too much governed by the Empress his Consort, a Princess endowed with a very great Genius, but haughty, proud, ambitious, enterprizing, obstinate in her Opinions,

^e *Princes.*

^f *Germans.*

^g *Austria.*

^h *Spain.*

ⁱ *Philip V.*

^k *The French King.*

nions, desirous to govern, and determined, cost it what it would, to procure considerable Estates for her Children; a Princess, in a Word, more universally feared than beloved in all the Courts of *Asia*¹. *Gelaleddin* and *Cha-Sephi*^m, who had lately made their Union more close, by the Marriage of a Princess of *Persia* with *Negeddin*ⁿ Prince of *China* by a second Marriage, had the same Interest and the same Designs; and the Emperor of *China* had moreover, as we have observed above, some Claims to the Succession of *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*.

It was very much the Interest of *Olabi*^o, *Gelaleddin*'s eldest Son by his second Wife, to live in a good Understanding with *Persia*, who had considerably contributed to raise him on the Throne of *Cochin-china*^p. This Prince, tho' young still, governed with Wisdom and Prudence; and, what is much to his Honour, was beloved by his Subjects, who are a restless, inconstant Nation, difficult to rule. He was in his Heart, an Enemy to the House of *Delly*^q; but as his Dominions could be easily invaded by the Queen of *Goleqnda*^r and her Allies; this Consideration made him hesitate a long while, whether or not he should join in Alliance with *Persia* and *China*; and, on the other hand, his Father-in-Law *Selim-Kan* King of *Thibet*^s, and *Raja* of *Labor*, inspired him with pacific Sentiments.

Cha-Askeri reigned in *Corea*^t. This Prince being Brother-in-Law to the late Emperor of *Mogul*,

¹ Europe. ^m Philip V. and Lewis XV. ⁿ Don Philip.
^q Austria. ^o Don Carlos. ^p Naples and Sicily.
^r Hungary. ^s Poland. ^t Portugal.

gul, had laid some Claim to the Imperial Succession ; on which Account he had been on the Point of entering into a War with the Queen of *Golconda*. But the Fear which he conceived of the Maritime Power of the Emperor of *Japan*, whose Ships might infest the Sea-Coast of his Dominions, prevented him from breaking out with her. For the rest, that Prince was not much to be depended upon, for his Mind was not in a very sound Disposition.

Korsula, Sovereign of *Jesova*^v, was in Possession of the Kingdom of *Necbal*^z. Though we have already mentioned this Prince on Account of his Father *Koturi*'s Abdication, and of the War he carried on against *Cha-Reffinc-Frola*, in Conjunction with *China* and *Persia*, yet his Conduct in the present Circumstances obliges us to bring him once more upon the Stage. This Monarch, who had lately married a Sister of the Prince of *Aracam* ^y the Queen of *Golconda*'s Husband, was strongly solicited by that Princess. The Offer she made to give up to him a considerable Part of the Principality of *Bengale*^z, to which he pretended a Right, would have been sufficiently capable to determine him. But the Propositions which *China* and *Persia* made him on the other Side, kept him in Suspence. After all, it seemed but natural, that he should join with the Queen of *Golconda*, who had it at every Instant in her Power to perform the Conditions of the Treaty : But if War was once declared, it was to be feared lest *Persia* and *China* should take from him, not only what the Queen of *Golconda* might have given up to him, but also
his

^v Savoy.
Milaneze.

^z Sardinia.

^y Tuscany.

^z The

his own Dominions. This Prince therefore, as a skilful Politician, protracted the Negotiations in order to gain Time, and to determine himself according to the Turn which Affairs should take. In the mean time, he was courted by both Parties, and would perhaps have declared at last against the Queen of *Golconda*, if the *Japonefe* had not determined him in Favour of this Princess, by the Offer they made him of large Sums of Money under the Name of Subsidies, and of Troops for the Defence of his Dominions. Thus this Prince, who, like his Father, loved to fish in troubled Waters, did not suffer himself to be won, but when he got a real Advantage by it. If the Empress of *China* ^a, had not scrupled too long to grant to *Korsula* the Share he demanded in the Countries that were to be conquered and taken from the Queen of *Golconda*, that Stroke had been prevented; but as she had an Eye upon those same Countries, which she designed as a Settlement for her second Son, who was the *Sophi*'s ^b Son-in-Law, she continued obstinate against all the Rules of good Policy, and would not give up what she ran no manner of Danger to promise, since it was still to be conquered.

The Emperor of *Russia* was a Prince still at his Nourse's Breast, and his Father governed the Empire with the Title of Regent. The Queen of *Golconda* might so much the more depend on that powerful Empire, as the Regent and the Ministry were entirely devoted to the House of *Delly* ^c.

Dabur

^a *The Queen of Spain.*
^c *Austria.*

^b *The French King.*

Dabur of *Hassceleffe* reigned in *Falekeldar*^d, and *Mohadi* in *Balck*^e. These two Kings saw with Concern, the Agitation which *Cha-Reffinc-Frola*'s Death occasioned in the several Courts of *Asia*. Every Thing foreboded an approaching War, which they could have wished to have prevented.

Mahmouth was Emperor of the *Turks*, and whatever Inclination he might have to disturb the House of *Delly*, he was too much taken up with the Defence of his own Dominions, to think of interfering with the Affairs of the Empire of *Mogul*^f.

After the different States we have been mentioning, the *Ceylaneze*^g made a considerable Figure in *Asia*^h, and their Alliance was courted by all the Princes. Their Government is Republican. The Publick Authority resides indeed in a certain Number of Deputies, which every Province appoints, and who represent the whole Body of the State, and act in its Name. But as every Province is free, and Mistress to take such Resolutions as she thinks proper, and to govern herself after her own Fancy, they who are at the Head of Affairs can come to no Resolution in certain Cases of Importance, without consulting the respective Provinces, whose Advice they are obliged to take. The Opposition of one single Province is sufficient to cause any Proposition to be rejected, or to stop the Execution of any Resolution. Besides this, the Grand Assembly, which is entrusted with the Sovereign Power, consists of so great a Number of Persons, and of such different Characters, that it is almost impossible they should be
unanimous

^d Sweden. ^e Denmark. ^f Germany. ^g The Dutch.
^h Europe.

unanimous, and all act with the same Zeal for the publick Good. One may easily guess to how many Inconveniencies such a Government may be subject, how easy a Matter it is to create Divisions amongst the Deputies, and to make an Advantage of them to the Prejudice of the Nation. It is even surprizing that this State subsisted so long. The several Checks it has suffered since about two hundred Years that the *Ceylaneze* shook off the Yoke of *China*ⁱ, to form themselves into a Republick, the almost continual Disunion, which prevails in their Grand Assembly; the Discontent of the People, which has been sometimes carried to an open Rebellion; the Care they take to keep Men of a good Understanding out of the Administration; and above all the Want of a Chief, whose illustrious Birth might dazzle the Eyes of the Subjects, and who might unite in his own Person the greatest Part of the Publick Authority; would make one conjecture, that that State will not continue long in the same Condition it is in, especially as it has already suffered some Alterations, which, though but little considerable in Appearance, have yet an Influence upon the very Nature of its Constitution.

After the Death of *Cha-Reffinc-Frola*^k, the Sovereigns of that State acted after such a Manner, as to some seemed very extraordinary, and to others very prudent. They negociated at the Court of *Persia*^l, with which they would by no means fall out, and shewed a great Regard for the House of *Delly*^m, the Emperor of *Japan*, and all the Powers concerned. It concerned

ⁱ Spain.^k The Emperor Charles VI,^l France.^m Aultria.

cerned
Peace
their
tensive
which
wherev
of Inh
and in
Their
from
constit
render
be in
War.
quence
preven
it was
dium,
Power
terests
Emper
the P
nished
Check
the Pe
also to
of *Vij*
very
Prince
it con
House
Succes
of G
which
the Se

ⁿ Eu

cerned them indeed very much to preserve the Peace of *Asia*ⁿ. A War could not but hurt their Trade exceedingly, which was very extensive, and the only Support of their Country, which does not by far produce sufficiently wherewithal to maintain a prodigious Number of Inhabitants. Their Subjects are all Traders, and in a Manner the Factors of all *Asia*. Their Capital is a general Staple; they receive from abroad immense Riches, which as they constitute the Wealth of the People, so they render the State very powerful. They would be in Danger of losing those Advantages by War. It was therefore of the utmost Consequence to them to use all their Endeavours for preventing a Rupture: but at the same Time, it was extremely difficult to keep such a Medium, as might give Content to the other Powers, who had such opposite Views and Interests. *Persia* and her Allies, wanted the late Emperor's Succession to be dismember'd, and the Power of the House of *Delly* to be diminished, which had already received a very great Check, by the Extinction of the Male-Heirs in the Person of *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*: *Persia* desired also to put the Imperial Scepter into the *Raja* of *Visapour*'s ° Hands. It was in many respects very indifferent to the *Ceylaneze* whether that Prince or any other were elected Emperor: But it concerned them exceedingly to support the House of *Delly*, and to continue the Imperial Succession entire upon the Head of the Queen of *Golconda*, because of the immense Sums which she and her House owed them, and for the Security of which several Cities in ^p *Feldran* had

ⁿ Europe. ° *The Elector of Bavaria*. ^p *Flanders*.

had been mortgaged to them ; it was so much the more their Interest to keep those Cities in their own Hands, as they covered the Countries they possessed on that Side. If they had openly declared against the Queen of *Golconda*^a, they would have been in Danger of losing that Security : and the more so, as the *Japoneſe*, who had a long time wished to have a Footing in the Neighbourhood of *Persia* and *Mogul*^r, might have advanced to that Princess the Sums she wanted to reimburse the *Ceylaneſe*^s, and put themselves thus in their Stead : A Stroke, which it was very material to ward off, since the Power of the *Japoneſe* gave the Inhabitants of *Ceylan* already but too much Jealousy, not to dread their Neighbourhood above any thing in the World. Another Reason, which was not less powerful to make the Sovereigns of *Ceylan* adhere to the Queen of *Golconda*, were the Treaties of offensive and defensive Alliance between the House of *Delly*^t, *Japan* and them. Further, the *Japoneſe* were very strong by Sea ; and could very much annoy the Trade of the *Ceylaneſe*, to which, after a War which did not prove advantageous to the latter, the People of *Japan* had already given a very severe Blow, by depriving them of the Liberty of trading from *Ceylan* to *Japan* and back again, but in *Japoneſe* Vessels.

The Sovereigns of *Ceylan*, in order to fulfil their Engagements with the House of *Delly* and the Emperor of *Japan*, ordered great Warlike Preparations to be made both by Sea and by Land : But at the same time, in order to avoid

a

^a Hungary.
Dutch.

^r France and Germany.
^t Austria.

^s The

a Rup
Prepar
was ea
Pursua
to perf
an Ex
which
Howev
House
the Pe
which
House
still So
natural
that P
belong
rifonec
happen
declare

Wh
fo muc
were i
blamec
public
plaints
fection
rageou
who y
took
such D
ing, a
They
to ind
owed
confid

a Rupture with *Persia* and her Allies, those Preparations were carried on so slowly, that it was easily understood they were made purely in Pursuance of Treaties, which they were obliged to perform, and this Obligation served them for an Excuse, especially at the Court of *Persia*, which secured them against all Reproaches. However, by continuing united with the House of *Delly*, they exposed themselves to see the *Persian* Arms take from them all those Cities which had been mortgaged to them by the House of *Delly*, considering that *Nagar* ^u was still Sovereign of those Cities, and that it was natural for *Persia* to begin her Hostilities against that Princess, by attacking those Places which belonged to her, notwithstanding they were garrisoned by the Troops of *Ceylan*. And this happened accordingly, as soon as the War was declared, as we shall relate hereafter.

Whilst the Sovereigns of *Ceylan* behaved with so much Caution, many of their Subjects, who were ill pleased with the Ministry of *Persia*, blamed their Conduct most loudly. Places of publick Assemblies rung with nothing but Complaints against the Governments, Proofs of Affection towards the Queen of *Golconda*, and outrageous Discourses against her Enemies. They, who were at the Head of the Government, took no Notice of all this; they knew that such Discourses were held chiefly in the Evening, and after People had drank plentifully. They judged that the least they could do, was to indulge the Traders, to whom the State owed all its Strength, a full Liberty to censure; considering also that these People had no other View

^u *The Queen of Hungary.*

View but to refresh themselves from the Fatigues of the Day, and that when they awaked in the Morning, they did not remember a Word of what was said in the Evening, and had no other Care, but that of their Trade, in comparison to which it was well known, that every thing was indifferent to them, till the Time of their Evening Meetings.

Tunquin ^w, another rich and powerful Commonwealth, though of a small Extent, was not less considerable. The Government of the State is entrusted with a certain Number of Noblemen, at the Head of whom there is a Chief ^z, who has no Power but in Conjunction with the supreme Council. Independently from that Council, there is a sovereign Tribunal composed of ten Citizens, just, incorruptible, and perfectly acquainted with the Laws and Constitution of the State. This Tribunal is formidable both to the great and the little Ones, and keeps every body to his Duty. That Form of Government is very ancient, a great deal of Wisdom and Prudence have been at all Times the Support of it, and to these Virtues the State is indebted for its Wealth and Strength. The *Tunquineze*, conducting themselves always by the same Principles, would not concern themselves with the Wars into which they foresaw that *Cha-Ressinc-Frola's* Death was like to engage the greatest Part of *Asia* ^y. Careful to secure their Country against any Attempt, they remained the Spectators of the Events.

The *Kalmucs* ^z, who are a numerous People, dispersed among inaccessible Mountains, warlike, frugal, free from the *Asiatic* Luxury,

and

^w Venice. ^x *The Doge*. ^y Europe. ^z *The Switzers*.

and f
selves
They
pende
itself
ther f
good
Asia,
provi
free t
from
ney t
scarce
Thes
applic
secure

TH
Ava
by th
larger
withi

Su
Ressinc-Frola's
ing in
to *Asia*
tion
Affair
Persepolis
ed co
and
bassa
when

TH
Asia on

* C
d Fran

and from all Ambition of aggrandizing themselves, made themselves also to be courted. They are divided into several *Hordes* ^a, independent of each other, each of which governs itself as it pleases; but they are all allied together for their common Interest. They live in a good Understanding with all the Powers of *Asia*, and refuse a Succour of Men to none, provided they be paid; a Policy by which they free their Country, which is not very fruitful, from its superfluous Inhabitants, and cause Money to be carried thither, which would be very scarce, were it not for that kind of Traffick. These People kept up an exact Neutrality, and applied themselves like the *Tunquineze*, only to secure their Frontiers.

There were also the Principalities of *Aracam* ^b, *Ava* ^c, and several other small States, which, by their Situation, followed the Stream of the larger States upon which they bordered, or within which they happened to be inclosed.

Such was the Disposition of *Asia* when *Charreinc-Frola* died. The *Raja* of *Guzarate* having invited the others, they prepared to repair to *Amadabat* ^d, in order to proceed to the Election of a Head of the Empire. This grand Affair put all the Powers of *Asia* in Motion, *Persia* was raising numerous Armies, and erected considerable Magazines upon the Frontiers; and prepared herself however to send an Ambassador to *Amadabat*, as she is used to do, when an Emperor is to be elected.

There was at that Time at the Court of *Persia* one *Scadeck* ^e, a Man who had a great deal of

^a Cantons.

^b Tuscany.

^c The Milaneze.

^d Francfort.

^e Marshal De Bellisle.

of Wit, and was not less ambitious. He was not very young, and had passed all his Lifetime in the Profession of Arms, of which he had made a serious Study. He was brave, sometimes rash, but a good Officer, and very understanding. Though he fatigued the Soldiers by frequent Reviews and Exercises, yet he was very much beloved by them, because he procured them some Perquisites by employing them in the Works of the Towns of his Government, and because he supported them against their Officers, for whom he was said not to have a sufficient Regard. He was lively, obstinate in his Opinions, forming Projects, and wishing, with very good Reasons, to be raised to the highest Rank in the Armies, in which, notwithstanding his Capacity, he had been but slowly advanced. His Family, though not ancient, was illustrious. His Grandfather^f had been in the Ministry, and died out of Favour. This Disgrace did considerably lessen the Credit of his Family; but as it was very rich, it supported itself; and *Scadeck*, who was become the Head of it, was much esteemed at Court. He was desirous to know every thing, and omitted nothing that could acquaint him with the strong and weak Sides of the several Powers of *Asia*; which, together with the Correspondence he kept every where, gave him so much Work, that he was said to have employed daily six Secretaries.

He was enterprizing, envied by some, and thought by many not to know how to suit to his Projects the necessary Means to make them succeed. He had a Brother seven Years younger than

^f *M. Fouquet.*

than
sia, a
gard
who
fore
confi
two
dersta
sult t
ed of
Sca
had f
he co
not c
Head
over
ing t
the H
confi
for C
erful
perial
make
who
Man
racter
their
fairs
sensib
the L
ly to
down

g T
many
stria
° *Eled*

than he, also an Officer in the Armies of *Persia*, and who was not inferior to him with regard to Wit, but more sedate, more prudent, who examined Things more coolly, and, before he entered upon any Enterprize, always considered how he could get through it. These two Brothers lived together in a very good Understanding, and the eldest was pleased to consult the younger, whose Advice, 'tis said, prov'd often very useful to him.

Scadeck, such as we have represented him, had formed, they say, a grand Scheme, which he communicated to the *Athemadoulet* ^g. It was not only to set the Crown of *Mogul* ^h on the Head of the *Raja* of *Visapour* ⁱ, by winning over some of the chief *Rajas* ^k, and intimidating the rest; but also to give a mortal Blow to the House of *Delly* ^l, by stripping it of its most considerable Dominions, to make a Settlement for *Cha-Baskan* ^m, who of himself was not powerful enough to support the Dignity of the Imperial Crown. He shewed, that in order to make that Scheme succeed, the Ambassador who was to be sent to *Amadabat* ⁿ, should be a Man perfectly acquainted with the several Characters of the *Rajas* ^o, capable to work upon their Mind, and well enough skilled in the Affairs of the Empire of *Mogul*, to make them sensible, that it was their true Interest to second the Designs of *Persia*: That in order effectually to support those Negotiations, and to bear down for ever the House of *Delly* ^p, it was necessary

^g The Prime Minister Cardinal De Fleury. ^h Germany. ⁱ The Elector of Bavaria. ^k Electors. ^l Austria. ^m The Elector of Bavaria. ⁿ Francfort. ^o Electors. ^p Austria.

cessary to send into the Dominions of *Visapour* [†] an Army of a hundred thousand Men, which under the Name of auxiliary Troops to the *Raja*, and with a Pretence to assist him in asserting his Claim to *Cha-Ressinc-Frola's* Succession, should seize upon the Principality of *Delly*, the Kingdom of *Jenupar* [‡]; and the most beautiful Provinces belonging to the Queen of *Golconda* [§], and would at the same Time keep in Awe on that Side the *Rajas* and other Princes, who might be favourably inclined towards that Princess: That another Army of forty thousand Men at least, should be sent into the Dominions of the *Raja* of *Multan* [¶], to protect them, to keep his Neighbours in Awe, and to be at Hand to enter into the Principality of *Cabul*, of which the Emperor of *Japan*, who was known to be in the Interest of the House of *Delly*, was——And above all, to make sure of the King of *Zagathay* ^{||}, whose late Invasion of the Province of *Bacar* [^], was a powerful Diversion already made, which it was material to make an Advantage of: That in the mean Time the Emperor of *China* [×] should, in Conjunction with his Son the King of *Cochinchina* [†], invade the Dominions, which the Queen of *Golconda* was possessed of beyond the *Ganges* ^²; but that the Success of this Affair depended on a speedy Execution, and on large Sums of Money; nor could it take up above six Months Time, if this Scheme was punctually followed.

Ismael-

[†] Bavaria. [‡] Bohemia. [§] Hungary. [¶] The Elector of Cologne. ^{||} Prussia. [^] Silesia. [×] The King of Spain. [†] Naples and Sicily. ^² The Po, i. e. in Italy.

If
the
ther
beside
him.
stand
conda
bold
sary
be g
Meas
be bo
vent
Time
to hi
tions
to hi
warde
Assen
great
mittee
on th
pire o
courte
Mone
of *Vis*
in the
King
mon
could
ried h
be said

^² Ca
Marsha
tor of
Franc

Ismael-Beg ^a lik'd the Scheme very well, but the Expence of two Armies, amounting together to an hundred and forty thousand Men, besides the Charges of the Embassy, frightened him. He was also too short-sighted to understand that the Invasion of the Queen of *Golconda's* Dominions was to be considered as a bold Stroke, for which it was absolutely necessary to be in Arms; that otherwise, it would be giving Time to the Enemy to take such Measures, as to make the proposed Conquests be bought very dear, or even perhaps to prevent them. But the *Athemadoulet* ^b, at the same Time that he approved the Scheme, reserved to himself the Liberty of making such Alterations in it, as his saving Temper should dictate to him. However, the Author of it was rewarded with the Title of Ambassador to the Assembly of *Amadabat*, and honoured with the great *Calaat* ^c, and immense Sums were remitted to him. He was ordered to practice upon the *Rajas* ^d, and other Princes of the Empire of *Mogol* ^e, whose Alliance deserved to be courted, and to spare neither Insinuations, nor Money to win them; to concert with the *Raja* of *Visapour* ^f, the Operations of War set down in the Scheme; and finally, to confer with the King of *Zagathay* ^g, for the Good of the common Cause. *Scadeck* ^h omitted nothing that could render his Embassy splendid; and he carried his Magnificence so far, that it may safely be said, that they had never seen at *Amadabat* ⁱ,
any

^a Cardinal De Fleuri. ^b Prime Minister. ^c Made
Marshall of France. ^d El Etors. ^e Germany. ^f Elec-
tor of Bavaria. ^g Prussia. ^h Marshal De Bellisle.
ⁱ Francfort.

any Thing so sumptuous, nor a Retinue so numerous and so rich. To give the Reader some Notions of the prodigious Expence he was at, it will be sufficient to observe, that every Week there set out from *Ispahan* ^k two Waggon^s loaded with Provisions for *Amadabat*, whither they arrived in very few Days, by Means of fresh Horses, which were kept at small Intervals on the Road. However he did not set out with all the Satisfaction he could have wished. The *Athemadoulet* declared to him, that the *Sophi* ^l was indeed willing to march an Army of forty thousand Men towards the Dominions of *Multan* ^m, but that he could give only the same Number to the *Raja* of *Visapour* ⁿ, with the Title of *Generalissimo*. *Scadeck* represented in the strongest Manner, that such an Army was not sufficient for the intended Operations; he went even so far, as to say, that it was exposing the Glory of *Cha-Sephi* ^o, and the Honour of the Nation; that it were better not to attempt any Thing, than to do so little; wherein he was even seconded by *Rhedi* ^p, but all was to no Purpose; he was obliged to submit to his Destiny, with the Vexation of foreseeing, that so fine a Scheme should miscarry, but at the same Time with the Resolution to owe the Success of it only to his own Genius, and to the Springs he reckoned to set a going. And indeed, he was so much the more animated to fetch from his own Brains the Resources he might have Occasion for, as he was sensible, that

^k *Patis*. ^l *The French King*. ^m *Cologne*. ⁿ *Elector of Bavaria*. ^o *Lewis XV*. ^p *M. Orri, Comptroller-General of the Finances*.

that in case of a bad Success, the Blame of it would be entirely laid upon him.

It was with such Dispositions, that before he repaired to *Amadabat*, he visited the *Rajas* of *Guzerate*, *Buckor*, *Multan* and *Brampour*^a, and some other Prince whom he thought proper to make sure of. He had room to be well pleased with the favourable Sentiments which he found in some, and with which he knew to inspire the others.

He went afterwards to the *Raja* of *Visapour*^r, to whom he declared the Design *Persia*^s had formed to raise him to the Imperial Throne, and what he had been negotiating with the *Rajas* and other Princes, we have been speaking of. He also delivered up to him, in the *Sophi's*^t Name, the Commission by which he was appointed *Generalissimo* of an Army of forty thousand *Persians*, who were to begin their March as soon as the Season would permit it, besides an Army of the same Number of Men, which was to assemble on the *Raja* of *Multan's* Frontiers. As an able Minister he extolled very much those Succours, and gave Hopes to expect more, in case the Situation of Affairs should require it. “ Which however did not
“ seem probable, said he, if immediately af-
“ ter the Junction of the *Persian* Troops with
“ those of *Visapour*, they should attack the
“ Queen of *Golconda* “ in the very Heart of
“ her Dominions, by marching directly to *Ge-*
“ *hanabad* “, the capital City of her Principa-
G 2 “ lity

^a The Electors of Mentz, Triers, Cologne, and Pala-
tine. ^r The Elector of Bavaria. ^s France. ^t The
French King. ^u Hungary. ^w Vienna.

“ lity of *Delly* ^x: That after they had seized
 “ upon it, which would be no difficult Mat-
 “ ter, the whole Country would submit: That
 “ afterwards they should fall upon the King-
 “ dom of *Jenupar* ^y, which would prove so
 “ much the easier a Conquest, as it were pre-
 “ ceded by that of *Delly* which is in its Neigh-
 “ bourhood, and as the King of *Zagathay* ^z,
 “ with whom he was ordered to confer, would
 “ render it still easier, by the powerful Diver-
 “ sion he had just made in the Province of *Bu-*
 “ *car* ^a.” Thus *Scadeck* laboured betimes to
 improve, to the Advantage of his Enterprize,
 even the indifferent Means that were afforded
 him, and which might have proved sufficient,
 if they had been employed after the same Manner
 he proposed. Thus, in order to prevent the
Raja of *Visapour* from being sensible of the
 Weakness of the Succours from *Persia*, he art-
 fully insinuated to him the Plan of the Opera-
 tions of the ensuing Campaign, and the Use
 he was to make of the Troops, the *Sophi* en-
 trusted him with, in order to aggrandize him-
 self at the Expence of the House of *Delly*.

Every thing being regulated with the *Raja* of
Visapour, *Scadeck* set out to go and meet the
 King of *Zagathay*, whom he found employed
 in besieging one of the chief Cities of *Bacar*,
 after a great Victory ^b he had gained over the
Dellians ^c, who were at last forced to yield up
 to him the Field of Battle, after they had
 fought a long while with the utmost Bravery.
Scadeck wish'd *Gion-Kan* ^d Joy, and commu-
 nicated

^x Austria. ^y Bohemia. ^z Prussia. ^a Silesia. ^b The
 Battle of Moldwitz. ^c Austrians. ^d The King of
 Prussia.

nicated to him the *Sophi's* ^c Designs to promote the Advantage and Tranquillity of the Empire of *Mogul*^t, and his Intention to cultivate a good Understanding and perfect Friendship with the King of *Zagathay*. The Minister of *Persia* continued but a very little Time with this Monarch, who paid him very great Honours; and having admired his Army, which was ordered to be under Arms, he set out again for *Amadabat*^z. It is pretended, and not without a great Probability, that during this Interview the finishing Hand was put to the Scheme, which the two Crowns had formed before.

The Queen of *Golconda*^h was at that Time in the most dangerous Situation. Whilst the King of *Zagathay*, in Conjunction with the *Raja* of *Labor*^l, was subduing with a wonderful Rapidity the Provinces of *Bacar* and *Sambar*, the *Sophi* and the *Raja* of *Visapour* were preparing to carry Fire and Sword into the Principality of *Delly*, and the Kingdom of *Jenupar*. At the same time the Emperor of *China*^k threatened those Provinces situated beyond the *Ganges*^l. This Princess wanted the Sinews of War, and would have had the Vexation to see her most beautiful Provinces taken from her, without being able to defend them, had not the *Japonese* amongst others supported her, by furnishing her with considerable Sums, by which she was put in a Condition to raise and keep up numerous Armies, to repel her Enemies, and finally to retrieve her Affairs.

G 3

About

- ^c *The French King.* ^t *The German Empire.*
^z *Francfort.* ^h *Hungary.* ^l *Elector of Saxony.*
^k *The King of Spain.* ^l *In Italy.*

About this Time died at *Ispahan*^m, *Serizada*ⁿ, a Princess not above twenty-seven Years old, who did not live happy with *Mirza-Haddi* her Husband, who died sixteen Months before her, though she was beautiful, of an amiable Character, and enchanting Sweetness of Temper.

In the mean time the several Bodies, of which the *Sophi* had ordered the Armies of *Visapours*^o and *Multan*^p to be composed, began to march. They that were designed to serve under the Command of the *Raja* of *Visapour* assembled on the Borders of *Persia* towards *Guzarate*^q, and the Army of *Multan* had its Rendezvous in the Province of *Segestan*. As soon of these two Armies, which were very beautiful, were assembled, the latter, being an Army of Observation, took post in the Dominions of *Multan*^r, and continued there this whole Campaign, and part of the following, without committing any Act of Hostility. It was commanded by *Azer*^s, a Man of Wit, who by a late Expedition against rebellious Islanders^t had deserved the great *Calaat*^u. He passed for a good Officer, and yet his Capacity was not universally acknowledged.

The former, of which *Schadeck*^w had the Command, independently from his Character of Ambassador to the Assembly of *Amadabat*^x, marched to *Visapour*, where it arrived after a long and difficult March. It was joined there by

^m Paris. ⁿ *The young Dutchess of Bourbon*. ^o *Bavaria*. ^p *Cologne*. ^q *Mentz*. ^r *Cologne*. ^s *Marshal de Maillebois*. ^t *The Corsicans*. ^u *A Marshal's Staff*. ^w *Marshal de Bellisse*. ^x *The Diet of Franckfort*.

by thirty thousand *Visapourians*^y, making thus an Army of seventy thousand Men, at the Head of which the *Raja* of *Visapour* set himself as Generalissimo. He marched immediately towards the Province of *Delly*^z, as though his Design had been to go directly to the Capital; upon which *Schadeck*, as we have already observed, had so well shewed him how necessary and even easy it was to seize. If he had done this, he would have put the Queen of *Golconda*^a under the greatest Perplexity. Upon the first Report of *Cha-Bascan's*^b being entered into the Principality of *Delly*, *Nagar*^c had taken the Alarm, and was retired into *Golconda*^d with her whole Court, and left but a weak Garrison at *Gehanabad*^e, with Orders to repair the ancient Fortifications, and to raise some new Works if they had Time.

Cha-Bascan had quite other Views than besieging the Capital of *Delly*: He would begin with the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Jenupar*^f, of which his Design was to cause himself to be elected and crowned King. But in order to prevent the *Persian* Officers from discovering his Intentions, he thought proper to begin with seizing upon some inconsiderable Frontier Towns, and the Moment it was least expected he fell on a sudden upon the Kingdom of *Jenupar*. *Nessir*^g, who was sent to command under him, because *Scadeck* could not be at the same Time at the Head of the Army, and at *Amadabat*, represented to him the dangerous Consequence of such a Step;

G 4

but

^y Bavarians. ^z Austria. ^a Hungary. ^b The late Elector of Bavaria. ^c The Queen of Hungary. ^d Hungary. ^e Vienna. ^f Bohemia. ^g Marshal de Broglie.

but to no Purpose: Nothing could persuade him to alter his March: He left indeed in the Principality of *Delly*, *Kazac*^h a *Persian* Officer, with a Body of ten thousand Men, most of them *Persians*, to keep that Province in Awe, and defend the Places he had taken. After these Regulations, which he judged sufficient, he divided his Army into several Columns, and continued his March to *Jenupar*^r the Capital of the Kingdom, under the Walls of which all his Troops were commanded to join, in order to undertake the Siege of it. The Queen of *Golconda* had no Army in that Country, but only a few Troops of Light Horse, dispersed here and there, and less formidable than they were troublesome by harassing *Cha-Bascan's* Troops; so that he arrived with very little Loss before *Jenupar*, which was immediately invested. The Garrison consisted at most of two thousand Men regular Troops, who did hardly let off one single Musket, and the Town wanted Ammunition: The bad Condition of the Place was well known; so that *Cha-Bascan* was not in a Humour to besiege it in Form, but resolved to make himself Master of it by means of the Correspondence he had with some Persons in the Town, or to take it by Storm. And it was accordingly taken by *Scalado* in a few Days time; a Feat of War so much the more glorious, as it happens but seldom. The Project and Execution of it were owing to *Kalife-Sultan*^k, a brave and experienced Officer, in whom the Troops reposed a great Confidence.

He

^h *M de Segur.*ⁱ *Prague*^k *The Count of Saxe.*

He was the Son of *Mahmoud* King of *Thibet*¹, whom we have already mentioned, by one of his Favourites of an illustrious Family. He was several Years in the Service of *Persia*, and *Cha-Sepi*^m loved him extremely. He had a lean Face, a Complexion somewhat tanned, a robust Air, a tall Shape, and an extraordinary Strength. His Wit was delicate, and his Conversation amiable. He was inclined to Love, and was reckoned to have superior Talents that way, a kind of Merit which made him very much esteemed by the Ladies, amongst whom it was asserted, that he had gained a very great Reputation. It has been reported that he fell passionately in Love with a Girl, named *Zilamira*ⁿ who was incomparable in the Art of representing the Passions, but less famous still by that Qualification, than by her Wit, and her noble Sentiments. She was visited at her own House by all the Persons of Rank and Distinction at *Ispahan*^o, and died in a few Hours in the most violent Pains, which gave room to suspect she had been poisoned. People went even so far as to say, that she fell a Sacrifice to the Resentment of a Woman, who was jealous of the too frequent Visits *Kalife-Sultan* paid her. Soon after her Death there was a great Talk of some pretended Letters between that Lord and her. But whether it be, that they were suppressed, or that that Report was ill-grounded, none of those Letters have ever been published.

G 5

As

¹ Augustus King of Poland, and Father to the present King. ^m Lewis XV. ⁿ Mad. Le Couvreur an Actress. ^o Paris.

As soon as every thing was settled at *Jennu-par*^p, *Cha-Baskan* was elected and crowned King with the Acclamations of the Inhabitants, who thought themselves happy that the Conqueror would not use them with the utmost Rigour, according to the Laws of War.

Fortune did not prove so favourable to this Prince in the Principality of *Delly*^q, nor even in his own Dominions of *Visapour*^r. *Kazac*^s, who, as we have observed, was left with a Body of ten thousand Men, to secure the Conquests made in that Principality, finding himself too weak to keep the Field before *Baker*^t, a *Golcondeze* General, retired under the Walls of *Secandra*^u, a pretty strong Town on the River *Gemene*^w, by which he hoped to receive his Convoys. But *Baker* cut him off from all Communication with it, and reduced him in a few Days to an absolute Want of Provisions. *Kazac*, being deprived of every Resource, chose to capitulate rather than to force, Sword in Hand, an honourable Passage at the Head of his little Army. This did him no Honour, though it has been asserted, that he produced in his own Vindication, Orders in Writing from *Ismael-Beg*^x to act thus : Which is not improbable ; considering that he was well received by the *Sopbi*^y, and employed afterwards. But a Fault, from which he could not clear himself, was the Want of taking the Precaution to have it inserted in the Capitulation what Route his Troops

^p Prague. ^q Austria. ^r Bavaria. ^s M. De Segur.
^t Count Traun. ^u Lintz. ^w The Danube.
^x Cardinal De Fleuri. ^y The French King.

Troops were to take in their Retreat ; so that they were forced to make a long and painful March, in which the greatest Part of his Soldiers perished, who were even refused the Necessaries of Life. *Kazac* was a tall Man, handsome and well-shaped ; he had a sprightly Wit, and was very gay, and proper for the Court, where his Handsomeness gained him more Reputation, than his Ability in War. *Baker*, after this Expedition, subdued in a very little Time the Remainder of the Principality of *Delly* ^z.

Xara ^a, at the Head of another Army, entered *Visapour* ^b. He overthrew *Rezsa* ^c, a General little capable to stop him ; and destroying all before him with Fire and Sword, he made himself Master of the chief Towns, and marched to the Capital, which he besieged. It made a vigorous Defence, but was at last forced to surrender. The *Golcondeze* ^d were reproached not only with plundering all the Houses, and the *Raja's* ^e Palace, from whence they carried off great Treasures, but also with committing all manner of Cruelties. The single Particular we are going to relate, will be sufficient to give some Notion of the Barbarity with which they are said to have used the Conquered. A rich Merchant, seeing the Enemy on the Point of seizing a Bridge, which communicated with the Town, caused it to be broke down immediately ; and from his House, which stood over-against it, and in which he had gathered a few choice Men, he annoyed the Besiegers very much. After the Town had surrendered,

^z Austria.^a Count Khevenhuller.^b Bavaria.^c Count Thoring.^d Austrians.^e Elector.

rendered, the *Golcondeze*, far from having a Respect for that brave Man, who had done nothing but his Duty, by fighting for his Prince and for his Country, hanged him up at the End of that same Bridge he had so well defended. *Xara* having taken the Capital City, became soon Master of the whole Country ; so that *Cha-Baskan*ⁱ within one single Campaign, found himself without any Dominions, and obliged to lead a pretty sad Life at *Amadabat*^g, where he kept his Court.

This Misfortune, together with the March of Prince *Salcher*^h, Brother-in-law to the Queen of *Golconda*ⁱ, determined the combined Army of *Zagathay* and *Labor*^k to retire. They evacuated the Province of *Sambal*. But a Misunderstanding arising between the Chiefs, their Armies separated, and that of *Labor* went to join the *Persians* in the Kingdom of *Jenupar*. In the mean time, Prince *Salcher* followed the King of *Zagathay* so close, that this Monarch could not avoid coming to a Battle. It was fought in the Plain of *Kussala*^l. The *Delians*^m bore down every thing before them ; and penetrating to the Body of Reserve, they entered into the Enemy's Camp. There the Soldiers, eager after Spoil, disband, and fall a plundering ; a Fault too common in Armies. The King of *Zagathay* improves the Opportunity, rallies his Troops, falls upon the *Delians*, makes a prodigious Slaughter of them, and snatches Victory out of their Hands.

The

ⁱ *The Elector of Bavaria.* ^g *Francfort.* ^h *Charles of Lorrain.* ^l *Hungary.* ^k *Prussia and Saxony.*
^l *Czeslaw in Bohemia.* ^m *Austrians.*

The Queen of *Golconda* began then to think of drawing *Gien-Kan* ⁿ off from the Grand Alliance, by giving up to him Part of what he had conquered. Those Negotiations could not be so secret, but something of it got Wind. *Nessir* ^o had even acquainted the Court of *Persia* with it, and sent Word several Times, that the King of *Zagathay* was by no means to be trusted; that he minded nothing but his own Advantage, that they would soon see him take the Queen of *Golconda*'s Part, or at least, make a Peace with her, without any Regard for *Persia* and her Allies. They gave so much the less Credit to those Advices in *Persia*, as *Scadeck* ^p, who notwithstanding his Penetration and Wit suffered himself to be deluded by that Prince, to whom he went very often, wrote quite the contrary. However, those Rumours were but too well grounded, and the Event shewed that *Nessir* was not mistaken. For the King of *Zagathay* did really conclude a Treaty of Peace with the Queen of *Golconda*, and drew back his Troops. This Princess had even the Satisfaction soon after to see the *Raja* of *Lahor* ^q accede to that Treaty, by means of the good Offices of the King of *Japan*.

The King of *Zagathay*'s Conduct was generally condemn'd, and cast a Blemish on his Glory, which he could never blot out. *Persia* would have warded off that Blow, if instead of forty thousand Men, *Ismael-Beg* ^r, being less saving, had sent an hundred thousand to the *Raja* of *Visapour*; for the great Superiority of
such

ⁿ The King of Prussia.

^o Marshal De Broglio.

^p Marshal De Belleisle. ^q Elector of Saxony. ^r Cardinal De Fleuri.

such an Army would have kept the King of *Zagathay* in Awe. However that be, after *Gion-Kan's* Defection, the Queen of *Golconda* being at Liberty to make such use as she pleased of the Troops she had sent against him, caused them to march immediately into the Kingdom of *Jenupar*^s, and, as her Subjects were very zealous and active to furnish her with Succours, she found herself soon in a Condition to make herself be dreaded, and the more so, as the *Persian* Army had been considerably lessened by Sicknes and Mortality. What remained of it was dispersed into several Quarters distant from each other, and which had not even an easy Communication with one another. It was the *Raja* of *Vijapour*^t, who against *Nessir's*^u Advice, had made that ill-contrived Disposition. It was even said, that *Scudeck*^w, who made several Journies from *Amadabat*^x to the Army, had advised it; and though it be not agreeable to that great Capacity he was reckoned to have in Warlike Matters, yet it is certain that the Blame of it was laid upon him. Soon after this strange Work, *Gha-Bascon*^y who had been just elected Emperor of *Mogul*^z, left the Command of the Army to *Nessir*, and went to *Amadabat*, there to receive the Imperial Crown.

Towards the Beginning of the Year there appeared a Comet, which continued visible during a whole Moon: It was very bright, and its Tail, which seemed hairy, stretched very far towards the North. Its Bigness and long Continuance gave Rise to several Conjectures, to which

^s Bohemia.^t Elector of Bavaria.^u Broglie.^w Belleisle.^x Francfort.^y The late Elector of

Bavaria.

^z Germany.

which, independently from the Concourse of the Comet, the Situation of Affairs were more than sufficient to give some Weight. But thus the Vulgar are easily frightened by those Meteors, though very natural, and do always infer from thence some sinister Prognosticks, which have no other Foundation but Ignorance.

The Queen of *Golconda*'s Army was still advancing by long Marches, towards the Kingdom of *Jenupar*, and received daily considerable Reinforcements. *Nessir*, who was informed of it, gave Orders to break up the Quarters; but by Reason of their great Distance from one another, and the Want of Communication, it was not possible to bring them together. All that could be done was to form, with great Difficulty, two or three Bodies, and to endeavour to join them immediately: But the Enemy, being much superior, gave not Time to do it. *Nessir*, who commanded the most considerable Body, had just met with some Loss, which determined him to retire under the Walls of *Jenupar*^a, and to put that Town in a Condition to make a stout Defence. As he had made it his Place of Arms, and it was pretty well provided, he reckoned to make the *Golcondeze*^b pay dear for the Conquest of it. He put Part of his Troops into the Town, and made the Rest encamp round its Walls, behind strong Entrenchments, which he caused to be raised, and to which he added all that his Experience made him judge proper. *Scadeck*^c came to him, and shut himself up with him behind those Intrenchments. The *Golcondeze*, commanded by

^a Prague.^b Austrians.^c Belleisle.

by Prince *Salcher* ^d appeared very soon before the Place. *Scadeck* offered immediately to surrender the Town to the Queen's Troops, provided the Army and Garrison were suffered to retire. Prince *Salcher* accepted the Offer for the Army only, but insisted upon the Garrison's being made Prisoners of War. *Scadeck* and *Nessir* rejected that Condition, and were immediately besieged in Form: But as they were entrenched up to the Chin, the Siege went on very slowly: And the Besiegers finding it was scarce possible to force the *Persians*, resolved to turn the Siege into a Blockade. *Salcher* shut up all the Passes so well, that *Scadeck* and *Nessir* could by no means have any Communication with the Country round about. In the mean time, a large Detachment of *Golcondeze* scoured the Country, and gave no Quarter to the *Persians*. One of those Parties came to a Place of no Defence, and of which the *Persians* had made an Hospital, where there were at least eight hundred Sick, guarded by about two hundred Men, who surrendered immediately; but they were all unmercifully put to the Sword.

The Queen of *Golconda*, being encouraged by those Successes, gave Orders at last to besiege *Jenupar*. *Salcher* made immediately all the necessary Dispositions to force *Nessir's* Intrenchments. They were attacked with Vigour, and defended with no less Bravery. In vain did the *Golcondeze* return to the Charge several Days following, they could not get an Inch of Ground. *Salcher*, seeing his Troops were discouraged, and that he had sacrificed a great many Men to
no

^d Prince Charles.

no
wa
tak
fall
for
had
fista
Wa
Dea
own
tow
five
Beg
the
cam
Bod
Reti
out a
but
jealo
This
Sepbi
tremi
but h
did n
himse
sence
the T
shoul
clared

• Ki
is abou
comes t
Fleury.
Mailli,
m The

no Purpose, resumed his former Project, which was to keep the Enemies blockaded, and to take them by Famine. This Project would infallibly have succeeded, if *Cha-Sephi*^c, being informed of the sad Condition his Troops were in, had not sent the Army of *Multan*^f, to their Assistance. A vast number of *Persians* died for Want in a few Months: And they who escaped Death, were reduced to eat the Flesh of their own Horses; a Pound of which was even sold, towards the End of the Blockade, for four or five *Mamoudies*^z. It was asserted, that *Ismael-Beg*^h had carefully kept secret from the *Sopbi*ⁱ, the Situation *Nessir* was in, and that that Prince came to know it only by a Letter, which some Body found Means to convey into the Hands of *Retima*^k: After she had read it, she left it without any Affectation upon a Table, not doubting but that the *Sopbi* being curious, and perhaps jealous, would not fail to take it up and read it. This innocent Stratagem succeeded, and *Cha-Sephi* came to know by that Means, to what Extremity *Nessir* was reduced. He seemed nettled, but his *Foible* for *Ismael-Beg* was so great, that he did not use him less kindly for it; he contented himself with assembling the *Divan*^l in his Presence, where it was debated, whether or not the Troops shut up in the Town of *Jenupar*, should be succoured. The *Athemadoulet*^m declared for the Negative, and represented what immense

* King Lewis XV. f Cologne. z A Mamoudy is about Twelve-pence Half penny French Money, which comes to about Six pence Sterling. b Cardinal de Fleury. i The French King. k Madem. De Mailli, the King's Mistress. l The Council. m The Cardinal Prime Minister.

immense Sums had already been spent in Favour of a Prince, who did not help himself: But most of the Ministers, and especially *Rhedi*ⁿ, who spoke with Vigour, tho' he owed his Elevation to *Ismael-Beg*, represented that it concerned the *Sophi's* Glory, and the Honour of the Nation, not only to extricate *Nessir* out of his present Difficulties, but also to support *Cha-Bascan* ^o, so much the more effectually, as they had already done a great deal for him; and finally, that the Danger being imminent, they were, without any further Debate, immediately to order *Azer* ^p to march with the utmost Diligence to *Jenupar* ^q. *Rhedi* went even so far as to say, that no Money would be wanted, and that he had at least three Millions of *Tomans* ^r ready for that Expedition. It was therefore resolved to succour *Nessir*, and *Azer* was accordingly ordered to march with the utmost Expedition. At that News his Army shewed an unexpressible Joy, and so much Zeal and Ardour, as gave the greatest Hopes, that notwithstanding the great Distance, it would arrive soon enough to disengage *Nessir*. In the mean time, the Court of *Persia* was under very great Uneasiness, from which it did not recover, 'till News came that *Azer* was arrived on the Borders of the Kingdom of *Jenupar* ^s, and had been joined by Ten Thousand Men, who had been sent some Months before, but could not penetrate into the Country: And finally, that notwithstanding *Salcher* had raised the Blockade to come and meet *Azer*, he was in Hopes to join *Nessir* very soon, who on

ⁿ Mr. Orri, Comptroller-General of the Finances.

^o The Elector of Bavaria, then Emperor of Germany.

^p Marshal De Maillebois.

^q Prague.

^r A

Toman is worth about Two Pounds Sterling, or Forty-five *Livres* French Money. This Note is in the Original.

^s Bohemia.

on his Side was also marching with Part of his Troops to facilitate the Junction ; whilst *Scadeck* remained with the rest at *Jenupar*. *Kalife-Sultan*, who was perfectly well acquainted with the Country, had also joined *Azer* with about fourteen Thousand Men, and in a Council of War, he engaged his Life, that he would lead the Army without any Opposition, through a Defile which he was acquainted with. But nothing could persuade *Azer* to march forward : Whether he was struck with a Panic, or had private Orders from *Ismael-Beg*, as it was suspected he had, at the Head of a fine Army of near Sixty-thousand Men, all in high Spirits, and wishing for nothing but to go and meet the Enemy, he retired, and marched towards the River of *Gemené* ^u, with a Design to get into *Visapouran* ^w. *Azer's* Conduct was so much the more to be blamed, as the intended Junction was of the utmost Importance, and he was strong enough to effect it in Spight of the *Galcondeze*. This General was indeed re-called, and turned out of Favour ; but too late, for the Ardour of his Troops was now slackened, and the Rigour of the Season, which was become excessive, whilst they were losing Time in Councils of War and Deliberations, had carried off a great Number of Men.

It must be confessed, that *Persia* took the worst Course : As her Design was to deliver the Army besieged at *Jenupar*, the easiest Way to effect it was, to send *Azer's* Army into the Country of *Visapour* ^x, from which it was at no great Distance, and into which it might have marched

[†] Count De Saxe.
ria.

^z Bavaria.

^u The Danube.

^w Bava-

marched in a few Days, without meeting with any great Opposition. This Diversion would infallibly have disengaged *Nessir*, because it would have obliged Prince *Salcher* to leave the Kingdom of *Jenupar*, in order to march to the Assistance of *Vesapour*, and to cover *Gehanabad* ^r, which had been in Danger. This Operation was at last resolved upon, but the proper Time was past: *Azer's* Army was reduced to the greatest Distress, and its Ruin was completed by a long and troublesome March, without Magazines, without Provisions, through a Country but little fruitful of itself, and already ruined by the Passage both of Friends and Enemies; add to this, that that Army was incessantly harrassed by *Salcher*, who followed it. However, the Arrival of this Army, though very much impaired, into the Country of *Visapour*, contributed to recover it. But, notwithstanding, the Supplies which the *Sophy* ^z sent thither, *Nessir* ^z, who after *Azer's* Disgrace, had took the Command upon him, could not keep that Country. The *Dellians* ^a drove him out of the Dominions of *Visapour*, which were taken and re-taken three Times, and at last entirely ruined at the third Conquest the Queen of *Golconda* made of them.

The *Persians* were still Masters of some Towns in the Kingdom of *Jenupar* ^b, which were successively besieged. *Scadeck* ^c was shut up in the Capital ^d with about eleven thousand Men, exclusive of the Sick. When Prince *Salcher* marched out of that Kingdom to follow the Army

^r Vienna.^a Austrians.
isle.^z The French King.^b Bohemia.^d Prague.^z Broglie.^c Marshal De Bel-

Arm
to in
and
mig
But
a P
ceal
secu
and
Tro
he o
neral
diers
of P
the
amon
make
Depa
Day,
sixtee
Wag
with
the S
sals f
pour
by ve
Inhab
which
thing
took
City
some
ing in
were f
Patrol

Army of *Azer*, he left there *Zieki* with Orders to invest *Jenupar* again. That General obeyed, and cut off all Communication which *Scadeck* might have with the neighbouring Country: But after two Months Blockade *Scadeck* formed a Project to get out of the Place, and to conceal his Retreat from the Enemy. In order to secure the Success of so great an Enterprize, and to put the Charge even upon his own Troops, four Days before the Execution of it he ordered the Garrison to get ready for a General Sally: in consequence of which, the Soldiers were provided with a certain Quantity of Provisions, and all the Horses that were in the Town were taken up, and distributed amongst the several Bodies. *Scadeck* did not make his Design known till the Day before his Departure, and marched out before Break of Day, at the Head of ten thousand Men, with sixteen hundred Horses, a Train of Field-Pieces, Waggons, Baggage, and Caissons. He took with him several Hostages, both to answer for the Security of the Sick, and by way of Reprisals for what happened at the taking of *Visapour* *. He had provided himself with Money by very large Contributions he raised from the Inhabitants of *Jenupar* †, for the Payment of which they had stripped themselves of every thing that was valuable. At his Departure he took the Precaution to cause the Gates of the City to be shut, to prevent *Zieki*, who had some Correspondence in the Town, from being informed of what happened. His Measures were so well taken, that some of the Enemy's Patroles meeting with his Van-Guard imagined the

* Munich.

† Prague.

the *Persians* ² were going to a general Forage. But though he was by two Marches beforehand with *Zieki*, yet he was overtaken by some Light Horse. He lost at least three thousand Men by the Enemy's Sword, by Desertion, and by the Severity of the Weather, which was excessive cold. Almost all his Artillery, his Baggage, and even his own Equipage, and that of the Commissary General of his Army, were carried off. He had left in the Town a General Officer, and about nine hundred Men, with Orders to surrender upon the best Terms he could. Eight Days after he left the Place, *Zieki* summoned the Officer, who obtained an honourable Capitulation, the Garrison being suffered to march out with all the Honours of War. They found in the Town a numerous Artillery, a large Magazine of Ammunition in the Castle, Pontoons, a vast Number of Warlike Engines, and above three thousand Sick, who were made Prisoners of War. Notwithstanding the Misfortunes, which *Scadeck* met with in his Retreat, he deserves the greatest Elogies, since the Success of his Enterprize was, if not impossible, at least extremely difficult; for *Zieki* had caused all the Bridges to be broke down; and *Scadeck* laboured under an Indisposition, which did not suffer him to ride on Horseback: Notwithstanding which, he did not abandon his little Army, and caused himself to be carried to every Post where his Presence might be necessary. The Reward he had for so much Care and Fatigue was, that upon his Arrival at Court, he met with so cold a Reception, that he judged proper

² French.

h. P.
Queen
Queen

proper to retire to a Country Seat of his, a few Miles distant from *Ispahan*^b.

The Queen of *Galeonda*ⁱ celebrated the Surrender of *Jenupar*^k by one of the most sumptuous, and most gay Entertainments, which she gave the Court at *Gehanadah*^l. It was a Race of Horses and Chariots, after the Manner of the *Greeks*, so much the more remarkable, as there were none but Ladies, at the Head of whom were *Nagar*^m and her Sister *Remana*, who entered the List to contend for the Prize. A Shew till then unheard of in the whole Empire of *Mogul*ⁿ, and perhaps in all the rest of the World.

Soon after this, she established at *Jenupar*^o, a Tribunal to try the Citizens, and even the most eminent of them. It cost their Lives to some, and immense Sums to others. The Pretence of Punishments was, that they had shewed too great an Affection for *Cha-Baskan*; the true Crime of most of them was thought to be that they were very rich, and that *Nagar*^p wanted considerable and quick Supplies. The Severity this Princess exerted on that Occasion, far from diminishing the Notion of Cruelty her Enemies had conceived concerning her, served only to make it stronger. We have mentioned this Princess so often, that it is proper to acquaint the Reader a little more particularly with her Character, and with those of the Prince her Spouse, and of Prince *Salcher* her Brother-in-Law.

Nagar;

^b Paris. ⁱ Hungary. ^k Prague. ^l Vienna. ^m The Queen of Hungary. ⁿ Germany. ^o Prague. ^p The Queen of Hungary.

Nagar, Queen of *Golconda* and *Jenupar*^a was young, of a proper Size, and exceedingly beautiful in the Opinion of some People. She had a full Face, a large and high Forehead, fine Eyes, a haughty Look, a steady Air, a Nose somewhat too narrow, a pretty beautiful Mouth, though her Lips were thick, a fine Complexion, and a noble Gate. She had a great deal of Wit, and a Steadiness of Mind seldom to be met with in a Person of her Sex. She was imperious, passionate and vindictive, but generous and thankful; she loved to command, and would be punctually obey'd. The Cruelty of her Troops, and her severe Usage towards the Cities of *Visapour* and *Jenupar*^c, gave her, perhaps with some Reason, the Reputation of loving to sprinkle her Laurels with Blood, and making War like a raging Woman. It is true indeed, that her Enemies Obstinacy in stripping her of her Dominions, and the Extremities to which she had been reduced, were sufficient Motives to inspire her with Resentment, and to make her wish for an Opportunity to be revenged: But the unexpected Return of Fortune ought to have smother'd those ungenerous Sentiments, and to have left her nothing but a noble Ambition to excel above her Enemies by a Greatness of Mind, and conquer them by fair Play. Upon the whole, her Constancy in Adversity, and the Means she found to retrieve her Affairs, deserve as much to be commended, as she was blamed for her Obstinacy in refusing to acknowledge, as Head of the Empire, the Prince, whom the *Rajas* had elected, and consequently in protracting a War which cost the Empire

^a Hungary and Bavaria. ^c Munich and Prague.

Empire of *Magul* *, and all *Asia* †, so much Blood.

Narsic, Prince of *Aracam* †, and her Spouse, was of a middling Size, of a pretty vulgar Physiognomy, though he had fine Features enough. He was good-natured, had a narrow Genius, and no Capacity for War, and not even gained any Reputation in his Campaigns. The Queen his Consort had associated him in the Government, to do herself Honour, rather than for any Occasion she thought she had for him, or for any Use she foresaw she could make of him in that Respect.

His Brother *Salcher* † was tall, well shaped, but very ill favoured with the Small-Pox. He loved War and understood it; was brave, beloved by the Soldiers, but little by the Officers, whom he used sometimes with two much Haughtiness. He was active, vigilant, at least in the Morning, for he was reckon'd to care but little for the Affairs of War after Dinner. His illustrious Descent, and the Title of Brother-in-law to the Queen of *Golconda* gave him a great Authority; and *Nagar*, by bestowing upon him the Chief Command of her Armies, acted most prudently, and prevented thereby the Jealousy and Misunderstanding, which do but too much prevail amongst Generals, who generally speaking will yield nothing to one another, with regard to Birth, Merit and Capacity.

In the mean time, the *Sophi* †, being tired with a ruinous War, offered to retire his Troops, and to leave to the Empire the Care of sup-

* Germany. † Europe. † The Grand Duke of Tuscany. † Prince Charles. † The French King.

supporting the Head it had chosen. After some Difficulties raised by the Queen of *Golconda*, those Offers were at last accepted. In Consequence of which *Nessir* ^y assembled his Troops, and marched towards the *Indus* ^z. He was obliged to give Hostages for a Security that he would commit no Hostilities in his Retreat : A very needless Precaution, since *Salcher* with his Army followed the *Persians* ^a to the very Borders of their Country. Of about an hundred and thirty thousand Men, which the *Sophi* had at different Times sent into the Empire of *Mogul* ^b, *Nessir* brought back but twenty-five thousand ; and not so many by far, according to some : But what all are agreed in is, that the few who returned were in a deplorable Condition. It is reckoned that *Cha-Sephi* ^c lost in two Campaigns, not by the Sword, for there was but little Blood shed, but by Want, Cold and Desertion, at least fourscore thousand Men of his finest Troops ; a considerable Loss and very difficult to repair ! It cost him above seven Millions of *Tomans* ^d, a great many brave Officers, and a vast Number of Persons charged with divers Functions relating to the Service of Armies.

Nessir, having quartered his Troops on the Frontiers, went to Court, where he met with a very bad Reception. This General, whose Courage and Conduct at *Junepar* ^e was so much extolled, that he was looked upon as the only Warrior *Persia* had, did not meet with one single

^y *Marshal De Broglie.*

French.

^b Germany.

Note (r) p. 138.

^e Prague.

^z *The Rhine.*

^c *Lewis XV.*

^a *The*

^d *Vide*

gle
Fa
th
to
th
vo
lov
act
lon
ing
and
an
nie
tee
wh
Fa
is
fer
don
foll
Na
kep
No
of
hun
Fea
Sev
bein
Ple
Co
tho
and

^e
Cler
nast
louf

gle Friend, who would or dared to speak in his Favour. And this brave Officer, whom even the Enemy admired and respected, was ordered to retire upon his Estate. Some have imagined that *Cha-Sephi* resolved to turn him out of Favour, only to please *Cha-Bascan**, who did not love him. Others pretend, that he did really act very well at first ; but that at last he had no longer any Judgment, and that instead of minding his Profession, he spent his Time in eating and drinking, which he was charged to love to an Excess. However that be, it cannot be denied but that an Officer of three-score and fifteen at least, who was known to be brave, and who had well served, was worthy of another Fate ; especially after a War so difficult, that it is confessed, that they who carried it on, suffered more in two Campaigns than is commonly done in twenty. *Nessir* had a Brother, who followed the Profession of an *Iman*†. His Name was *Mahamet-Nessir*‡. He had formerly kept Company with great Folks, and made a Noise at Court, as much by the Character of his Wit, by his Sprightliness and Good-humour, as by his Talents and Inclination for Feasting and Hunting. He was pretty often at *Sevagi*'s^h, which procured him the Honour of being often admitted into *Cha-Sephi*'s Parties of Pleasure. He knew very well how to pay his Court, and was a Man pretty much in Vogue, though he had passed the Bloom of his Age, and had a pretty rough Physiognomy. Being

H 2

all

* The late Elector of Bavaria, and Emperor. † A Clergyman. ‡ Abbé De Broglie, Abbot of the Monastery of Mount St. Michael. ^h The Count of Toulouse.

all of a sudden seized with a Disgust for the World, he had, soon after *Sevagi's* Death, confined himself to a solitary Place with some *Faquirs*¹, whose Chief he was, and to whom he proved an Example by his regular Life. His Retirement surprized both the Court and the City; and they who knew him suspected very much that he would not constantly pursue a kind of Life so opposite to his Character. And yet, whether it was that he had a sincere Zeal, or feared to expose himself to the World's Talk, he persevered: And nothing but the dangerous Situation of his Brother in the Kingdom of *Jenupar*^k, could determine him to appear again at Court, whither he went to sollicite for his Deliverance. Having obtained his End, he returned to his Desert, and never left it since.

It was now two Years since the *Japoneſe* behaved towards the Crown of *Persia* after such a manner, as might be judged insulting. *Iſmael-Beg*^l had not taken any Notice of it, and his Regard to them did not perhaps contribute a little to render them more enterprizing. In order to awe them, and to make them respect the Name of *Persia*, they had made in that Country great Preparations by Sea; which appeared so much the more surprizing, as the Marine of *Persia* was not reckoned to be upon a very good Footing. The Command of the Fleet was given to *Tachmené*^m, second Son to *Zelida*ⁿ by her first Husband. He was a Lord of about thirty Years of Age, who had made Navigation

¹ Monks. ^k Bohemia.^m The Chevalier D'Antin.^l Cardinal De Fleury.ⁿ The Countess of Toulouse.

vigation his particular Study, which he wished very much had been more valued by the *Persians*, than it really was. He had carried his Attention to the most minute Particulars, and, when an Opportunity offered, he had not neglected to make himself acquainted with the Marine of the Nations that are most famous by Sea. He was tall, and so lusty for his Age, that his Gate seemed constrained. He had a round Face, a Forehead small rather than large, black and deep Eyes, an Aspect generally pretty rough, a Look which sometimes seemed perplexed, a short Nose that turned up, a pretty flat but agreeable Mouth, a fair Complexion adorned with a beautiful Red. His Voice was strong, his Way of speaking lively, and his Constitution robust and vigorous. His Genius was not sprightly but accurate; he was humane, very regular in his Manners, and had gained an universal Esteem. He was a real Friend, and delighted in doing Service. They who did not know him thoroughly, found him sometimes cold and of an uneasy Temper, but his Friends were satisfied that his Coldness and sad Temper, were not essential to his Character, which was excellent. He was naturally gay, and loved to rally, but he did it always without offending even those to whom he owed no Regard. As he was never present at any Fight, one could not determine, whether he was brave or not: But he was too well born to give any Room to fear that he would have forgot himself on those Occasions, in which he would have been called upon to shew his Courage. After a Navigation of about ten Months, which gave the *Japoneſe* some Uneasiness, and during which his Health

was impaired, he retired very ill into the Ports of *Persia*, he was set on Shore with much Difficulty, and died within a few Days. They who had most assiduously paid their Court to him in his Life-time, held, after his Death, such Discourses as were injurious to his Memory: Some asserted that he died of the Wounds he received in a Duel he fought with an Officer of his Fleet. But People of Sense, or better acquainted with the Truth of the Matter, despised all these Reports, and did truly lament his Death. He left a Widow very rich, beautiful and young, by whom he had no Children. *Zelida*, who loved him very much, was extremely afflicted for his Death.

In the Beginning of the second War of *Jenupar* °, there arrived at *Ispahan* ¶ a *Turkish* Embassador, who was said to be charged with very important Negotiations, but, in Reality, only with a Treaty of Commerce. He had a numerous Attendance, and made a very magnificent Entry. *Ibbi* ¶ was ordered to accompany him in that Ceremony. This Embassador, whose Name was *Horeb*, was upon the Decline of his Age, of a middling Size, and of a venerable Air: He had a grave Countenance, and brisk and sprightly Eyes. He had a great deal of Wit, a pretty extensive Knowledge, an engaging Behaviour, an easy Politeness, and liked very much to live in *Persia*. He was thought to have had some Love Intrigues, which were not much known; but some of the chief Persons of his Retinue were engaged in such Intrigues as made a great Noise; so that he was obliged

° Bohemia.
Noailles.

¶ Paris.

¶ *Marshat* De

Obliged to use his Authority to put a Stop to them. As it is the Custom in *Persia* to pay all the Charges of the *Turkish* Embassadors, he desired that he might have himself the Management of his own Expences, and that for this Purpose, the Sums assigned for his Use might be delivered to him; wherein he was charged with a Design of getting Money, which Charge was not ill-grounded, for he was far from being generous.

He led a most agreeable Life at *Ispahan*, and when he set out from that City, *Cha-Sephi*^r loaded him with rich Presents for the Emperor his Master, which were more costly than those he had brought for the *Sophi*, tho' these were also very fine. He also received Presents both for himself and for his Attendants, with which he had Reasons to be satisfied. He continued above a Year at *Ispahan*, and did not leave it without Sorrow.

Soon after the Arrival of this Embassador, *Cha-Sephi* sent one to the Emperor of *China*^s, charged with Negotiations relating to the Projects of these two Crowns against the House of *Delly*^t, but chiefly to the Conclusion of the Marriage of one of the Princesses of *China*, with the presumptive Heir^u to the Crown of *Persia*; a young Prince thirteen Years of Age, handsome, of a lively Genius, sometimes difficult to govern, but who gave great Hopes. The Embassador's Name was *Boubec-Kan*^w: He was a tall Man, of a great deal of Wit, who spoke very well, was full

H 4

of

^r Lewis XV.
stria.
Rennes.

^s The King of Spain.
^u The Dauphin.

^t Au-
^w The Bish: p of

of Sprightliness, but his undevout Air did not agree very well with the Profession of a *Moullah* ^x which he followed, and for which he did not seem to be born: So that it was feared he would not succeed in a Court so devout as that of *Pe-king* ^y. He was artful and dissembling, and was thought to be guilty of some mean Proceedings unbecoming his Character. He was cavilling, mistrustful, covetous, and so passionate, that sometimes he broke out into very indecent Discourses. He was very well received by *Gelaled-din* ^z, but little entertained by the *Chinese* Lords, who had so much the less Esteem for him, as his Reputation was got there before him. Men were surprized at the Court of *Persia* ^a, that the *Athemadowlet* should have made such a Choice. But they who pretended to guess at his Reasons, imagined, that *Ismael-Beg* ^b was glad to take that Opportunity for sending out of the Way with Honour, a Man, whose intreaguing Genius he dreaded.

The King of *Nebal* ^c, as we have already observed, had declared himself for the Queen of *Golconda* ^d, and having joined the *Dellians* ^e, he marched against the *Chinese* and *Cochinchinese* ^f, who had invaded the Dominions of the House of *Delly*, situated beyond the *Ganges* ^g, under the Command of *Bedreddin* ^h, a *Chinese* Officer, famous by the Conquests he had made
some

^x A Clergyman or Bishop. ^y Madrid. ^z King
Philip V. of Spain. ^a France. ^b Cardinal
De Fleuri. ^c Of Sardinia. ^d Of Hun-
gary. ^e Austrians. ^f The Spaniards and
Neapolitans. ^g The Po. ^h The Duke of
Montemar.

some Years before of the Kingdom of *Cochinchina*. The Court of *Peking*, being very ill satisfied with the little Progress he made, recalled him, and sent in his Stead *Segedin*¹, who succeeding no better, for want of sufficient Troops, justified thereby the Conduct of his Predecessor. He did even find himself in a very perplexing Situation, because the King of *Cochinchina*^k had retired his Troops, and declared for a Neutrality, being awed, no doubt, by the *Japonesse* Men of War, which appeared on his Coast, and threatened to make a Descent there. *Segedin*, being considerably weakened by the Retreat of the *Cochinchinese*, resolved prudently to retire so far, that he might have no Reason to fear any Attempt against him. This wise Precaution would however have proved useless, and that General would soon have been obliged to give up the Game, the Enemy following him from Post to Post, if *Gelaleddin*¹ had not made in the Principality of *Jesova*^m a Diversion, which obliged the King of *Nechal*ⁿ to run thither with the best Part of the Troops he had joined with those of the Queen of *Golconda*^o. This Diversion, the Design of which was to penetrate into the Dominions of *Nagar*^p through those of *Korsula*, and thus to join *Segedin*, gave that General at first a little more Elbow-room. The Principality of *Jesova* was conquered in a very little Time, and the Capital City taken by *Negeddin*^q, the *Sophi*'s Son-in-Law, to whom his Father, the Emperor of *China*^r, had committed that Expedition.

H 5

¹ M. De Gages. ^k Naples. ¹ The King of Spain.
^m Savoy. ⁿ Sardinia. ^o Hungary. ^p The Queen of
Hungary, ^q Don Philip. ^r The King of Spain.

dition. *Korsula* * did not suffer that young Prince to enjoy his Conquests long, he made him leave them with the same Rapidity as he had taken them. *Negeddin* demanded such Supplies as might put him in a Condition to retrieve that Loss immediately: He not only received them, but *Gelaleddin* † sent him also *Soulaki* ‡ to command under him, instead of *Yerid* §, who was found too slow, and was also charged with being the Cause of the Loss of the Principality of *Jesova*. *Soulaki*, who was more brisk and enterprizing, enter'd again into *Jesova*, and having made himself Master of a Castle, the Garrison of which was made Prisoners of War, he marched to *Korsula*, with a Design to give him Battle; but he found him so advantageously posted, that he did not think proper to attack him. The two Armies continued two Days in sight of each other: And when it was least expected, *Necbal* marched off, and retired into another of his Principalities *, contiguous to that of *Jesova*, leaving the latter to the Disposal of *Negeddin*, who was received in the Capital as a Conqueror. This Proceeding made the Queen of *Golconda* † and the Emperor of *Japan* very uneasy, and gave room to suspect that there was some Treaty on foot between that Monarch and the Court of *China*; but he removed that Suspicion, and satisfied his Allies, justifying his Retreat by the want of Forage, the Weakness of his Troops, who were extremely fatigued, and the Enemy's Superiority.

The *Chinese* being Masters of the whole Country, in which they cantoned, exacted great

* The King of Sardinia.

† The King of Spain.

‡ M. De la Mina.

§ M. De Glimes.

* Piedmont.

† Hungary.

great Contributions from the Inhabitants, waiting for considerable Supplies from *Persia*, by which they reckoned to force the Passes in the following Spring. In the mean time *Negeddin*^z, in the midst of the Pleasures, which he had again introduced into the Capital^a, was in danger of losing his Life, his Appartment taking Fire in the Night-time: One of his Guards, full of Zeal and Intrepidity broke the Door of his Bed-chamber, carried the Prince away still sleeping, and saved his Life: There was no Time to lose; for a few Moments after, the Floor fell in, and the whole Appartment was reduced to Ashes. *Negeddin*, full of Gratitude rewarded his Deliverer most generously. This Accident, occasioned only by a want of Precaution, was suspected to be the Effect of *Korsula*'s Revenge, or at least of the Hatred his Subjects entertained against their new Masters. Thus People imagined remote Causes of that Accident, as injurious to the King of *Necbal*'s Reputation, as they were inconsistent with the Laws of War.

The *Sophi*^b resolved at last to assist his Son-in-Law with a Supply of twelve thousand Men, which he increased afterwards to twenty thousand, the Command of whom he gave to *Morat-Bakche*^c; a Choice, which it is asserted he made in order to give no Discontent to *Soulaki*^d, who standing upon Punctilios, and being jealous of his Rank, had declared, they say, that he would not serve with any *Persian* Officer, even of a Rank superior to his own. *Morat-Bakche* having joined *Negeddin*, they examined with

^z Don Philip. ^a Chambery. ^b The French King.
^c The Prince of Conti. ^d M. De la Mina.

with the Generals of the two Nations what were the proper Means to compass the End of the Diversion, and it was resolved to attempt a Passage through that same Principality^e, into which the King of *Necbal* was retired. After having secured the Preservation of *Jesova*, the combined Army began to march. The Princes, who were both young, brave, and eager after Glory, penetrated in one Campaign into that Principality, and took some strong Towns, at the Expence, indeed, of a great deal of Blood, but notwithstanding the Difficulties which they met with from the Nature of the Country, which is full of Defiles, very difficult to force, and notwithstanding the Resistance of *Korsula*, who disputed every Inch of Ground with as much Capacity as Courage. There was some Probability, that the Princes would have penetrated to the very Dominions of the Queen of *Golconda*, had they not been detained longer than they expected by a Siege^f, which proved tedious, and very bloody, and which the Season, which was pretty far advanced, and the Snow that fell, obliged them to raise, in order to put their Army, which was very much decreased, and prodigiously fatigued, into Winter Quarters, which it wanted extremely.

Soon after *Cha-Baskan's* ^g Exaltation on the Throne of *Mogul*^h, News was brought into *Asia*ⁱ, of the Revolution which had just happened in *Russia*^k, where the Army had unthroned the Emperor, still a Child, and put in his Stead *Selatiheb*^l, a Princess about thirty-three

^e Piedmont. ^f That of Coni. ^g The late Elector of Bavaria. ^h Germany. ⁱ Europe. ^k Muscovy. ^l Princess Elizabeth.

three Years of Age, and who was extremely beloved by the whole Nation. The Hatred which the People entertained against the Ministry, who, in their Opinion, followed a little too much the Principles of the House of *Delly*^m, was the Cause of that Revolution, which was so well concerted and so quick, that it was begun and compleated in one single Night. *Cha-Sepbi*ⁿ had at that Time an Ambassador at the Court of *Russia*, whose Name was *Sydameck*^o. He was a *Persian* Lord, about thirty-six Years old, tall, well shaped, of a lovely Figure, witty, extremely polite, and still more courteous with the Ladies. He was said to be deeply in Favour with *Selatibeb*, to whom, indeed, he paid regularly his Court, and who used him with great Distinction. What was very remarkable is, that the Soldiers deputed Fifty of their Number to *Sydameck*, to acquaint him with what they were doing, to recommend the Empress to him, for whom they knew, said they, that he had a very great Affection, and to tell him, that they earnestly desired their new Mistress should keep up a good Understanding with the *Sophi*^p, whom they loved and respected. This Event gave so much the greater Uneasiness to the Court of *Golconda*^q, as *Selatibeb* had caused the Ministers and some Lords to be arrested, who were entirely in the Interest of the House of *Delly*^r, and among whose Papers some Projects and Letters were found, with which the new Empress had no Reason to be pleased. This Revolution

^m Austria: ⁿ Lewis XV. ^o M. De la Chetardie.
^p The French King. ^q Of the Queen of Hungary.
^r Austria.

lution confounded all *Nagar's* ^s Affairs at that Court, and gave room to apprehend a Rupture. *Sydameck* did artfully improve the Dispositions the Empress was in, and as he gained daily more and more Credit with her, it was not questioned but she would soon declare openly in Favour of *Persia* ^t. The Crown of *Russia*, whose Power was but little known twenty Years before, had not been much regarded by the Sovereigns of *Asia* ^u: But the Emperor *Phadek* ^w, a very able Prince, who had extensive Views, had all of a Sudden roused his Dominions out of that kind of Nothingness they had been in till then, and created, as it were, a new Nation; by which Means he had drawn upon him the Eyes of all the World, and was come at last to have a great Influence in the general Affairs of *Asia*. *Sydameck* was the first Person, whom *Cha-Sephi* sent into that Country with the Title of Ambassador; this Step had been very much liked there; and there was room to think, that if *Persia* would resolve to keep always at that Court a Minister of the first Rank, she would constantly be very much respected by the *Russians*, and have a great Credit with them.

The Year before the *Persians* retired out of the Empire of *Mogul* ^x, the Queen of *Golconda* and her Allies sent several Bodies of Troops into *Feldran* ^y. Their Scheme was to penetrate into *Persia* ^z, and by that Diverſion to oblige *Cha-Sephi* to call back his Armies, which could not have been done without exposing them to great Dangers in their Retreat. But the *Sopbi* had

^s *The Queen of Hungary.* ^t *France.* ^u *Europe.*
^w *Peter the Great.* ^x *Germany.* ^y *Flanders.* ^z *France.*

had luckily taken proper Precautions: Far from laying down his Arms, he had made new Levies, which, as they were raised, had been sent to the Frontiers. Besides a numerous Army which in a few Days might be assembled in the Neighbourhood of the *Indus* ^a, he had another in that Part of *Feldran*, which belonged to him. Upon the Report that the Allies were in Motion on that Side, it was resolved to make that Army act. The Command of it was designed for *Seif* ^b, who was so ill advised as to refuse it, being vexed, perhaps, at his not obtaining the same Dignity with which *Nessir* ^c was rewarded, when he went upon his Expedition into *Jenupar* ^d. Upon *Seif*'s Refusal, the Command was given to *Ibbi* ^e. All the Princes and Grandees thought it their Duty to go to that Army. They set out late; and though they expected every Day to hear of some great Action, yet nothing was done, because the Allies entered upon no Enterprize. The *Sophi* shewed a great deal of Moderation on that Occasion: He saw the Enemy at his Door, he was not ignorant of their Projects, and yet he only put himself in a Posture of Defence, and took no Advantage of the Conduct of the Allies, which was so much the more uncautious, as no War had been yet declared. *Ibbi* applied himself to Marches, Encampments, and to his usual Precautions; he visited the fortified Towns, put them in a State of Defence, and took a particular Care of the Fortifications of a Sea-port Town ^f, which was of the utmost Importance, and which *Chaspi*

^a The Rhine. ^b M. De Cogni. ^c Marshal De Broglie. ^d Bohemia. ^e M. De Noailles. ^f Dunkirk.

Sephi would secure against all Attempts. This was young *Sevagi's* ^e first Campaign: He distinguished himself there, not so much by the great Sumptuousness of his Equipages, as by his Application to improve himself, his Watchfulness, his indefatigable Zeal, and above all, by his Affability, and by his Generosity. He deserved the Commendations of the Officers, and won the Hearts of the Soldiers. This young Prince was at that Time seventeen Years old; he was handsome, tall for his Age, and very well shaped. He had Wit in his Countenance, a noble Air, and a great Sweetness of Temper.

A constrained and perplexed Air he had with Persons of his Rank, or with Strangers, and a kind of Bashfulness made him sometimes seem to be out of his proper Place. But he overcame those Defects, at least in Part, during this Campaign, and acquired a more free and easy Carriage. He had a great deal of Wit, a noble Ambition, and an uncommon Goodness of Heart. In a word, he was a most lovely and hopeful Prince. *Zelida* ^h was extremely uneasy when he set out, because he was of a very weak Constitution: But two Months stay in the Army strengthen'd him very much, and he returned Home entirely changed for the better.

A little before this Campaign, died at *Isfahan* ⁱ, in the thirty-third Year of her Age, *Se-lätiheb* ^k, the Widow of *Semein I.* late Emperor of *China* ^l, in whose Behalf his Father had abdicated eighteen Years before, and who did not reign an whole Year. This Princess was the

^e Son to the late Count of Toulouse and Duke of Ponthievre.

^h The Countess of Toulouse.

ⁱ Paris.

^k Elizabeth.

^l Lewis I. King of Spain.

the Daughter of *Ali-Homajou*^m, and one of the two, whose Marriage, we said in the Beginning of these Memoirs, was one of the Conditions of the Treaty of Peace between *Persia* and *China*ⁿ. Since her Return to *Ispahan* she led a retired and pretty melancholly Life.

Towards the End of this same Year, *Retima*^o lost the Title of Favourite, and was disgraced. Her Good-nature proved the Cause of her Misfortune. She had three Sisters, one of whom she introduced at Court : Her Name was *Osiria*^p, and she had been a few Years a Widow, her Husband, who was a *Persian* Lord, being carried off by a pestilential Fever, at the Age of twenty-four or twenty-five. She was pretty, very fair, and though since she had been a Widow, she made no great Noise in the World, yet it was not without Pleasure and Ambition that she saw herself at Court. Being admitted by *Retima*'s Care into *Cha-Sepi*'s Parties of Pleasure, she was not without Hopes of moving his Heart, and supplanting her Sister. *Azamut*, one of the four *Mehters*, was said to have had a great Share in that Intrigue. He was a tall Man, well shaped, of an agreeable Air, extremely courteous, and had still a great Relish for such Pleasure, the excessive Use of which had broke his Constitution, and made him grow old before his Time. He had been a great Lover of Women, by whom he was thought to have been kindly received. His amorous Intrigues had made a great Noise in the World, and brought him into some Trouble,

^m *The Duke of Orleans, the late Regent.* ⁿ *France and Spain.* ^o *Madem. De Mailli.* ^p *The Dutchesse De Chateauroux.*

ble, out of which he extricated himself very well. He had a great Deal of Wit, was gay, amusing, very rich, but too extravagant. He was in a high Rank at Court, and much in Favour with *Cha-Sephi*^a. He was ambitious, and after the Death of *Ismael-Beg*^r, he was charged with aspiring to the Place of *Athemadoulet*^s; a Place, for which, notwithstanding his great Qualities, he was not very proper, on Account of his Inclination for Pleasure, his Carelessness, and his unsettled Mind.

Cha-Sephi could not withstand *Ofsria*'s Charms. But this covetous Woman, who would make the best Advantage she could of the Superiorty her Beauty gave her over *Retima*, caused her Conquest to be bought: She would not accept the Rank of a Favourite, but with such Titles and Distinctions, of which there had been but one Instance under the Reign of the Great *Cha-Abas*^r, and she did not surrender till she was sure of being put into such a Condition, as might secure her against all Events. *Cha-Sephi* was too deeply in Love not to grant every thing, and this Woman's Credit became so great, that it was feared she would at last govern him absolutely. It was for her that little and charming Apartment was made in the Country-seat, which, as we have observ'd above, the *Saphi* bought two Years after *Sevagi*'s^u Death; it was for her that those easy Carriages were invented, to remove her from one Place to another in those Times and Circumstances, which

her

^a Lewis XV.
Minister.

^r Cardinal De Fleuri.

^s Lewis XIV.

^u The Count of Toulouse.

her Lover judged to deserve the greatest Circumspection^w.

It was with an unexpressible Grief that *Re-tima* heard of her Misfortune : As she had loved sincerely, and for no other Interest but that of the Heart, she was a long time disconsolate. But a certain *Iman*^x, a Man of a great deal of Wit and Zeal, made her reflect upon herself : The frequent Conversations she had with him, restored the Peace of her Mind, and made her know her Duty : So that this same Woman, formerly sumptuously dressed, who minded nothing but Pleasure, was now seen to frequent the *Mosques*^y constantly, dressed very plain, mixed with other Women, from whom she was not distinguished but by her Devotion and Humility. She was more esteemed and more admired in that State of Humiliation, than she had ever been in the greatest Splendor of her Favour at Court. *Cha-Sepi* settled about nine hundred *Tomans* (a) a Year upon her, gave her a Palace, ordered her Debts to be paid, which amounted to Seventeen thousand *Tomans* (b) ; a Sum, which, though pretty large, will appear moderate, if it be considered that she made no Advantage of the Rank to which she had been raised, and that she did not receive above five hundred *Tomans* (c) a Year, which was by no means answerable to the Expence

^w Namely, when she was with Child. ^x A Clergyman. ^y Churches.

(a) About 1800 *l.* Sterling, or 40,000 *Livres French* Money.

(b) 34,000 *l.* Sterling, or 765,000 *French Livres*.

(c) About 1000 *l.* Sterling, or 22 500 *French Livres*.

—These three last Notes are in the Original.

pence she was obliged to make at Court. The Revenues of the Custom-house were assigned for the Payment of these seventy thousand *Tomans*: But, notwithstanding the *Sophi's* Orders, they who were charged with the Management of these Funds, not being satisfied with making the Creditors wait a long time, made the greatest Part of them lose considerable Sums.

Of *Retima's* two other Sister, the one named *Euxica*, had been some Years married to *Zengis*^c, a *Persian* Lord, who, though not of the first Rank, was pretty much consider'd at Court. *Euxica* was tall and well shaped, had one of those Physiognomies that are pleasing, and behaved after such a Manner, as gave no handle to Slanderers. The other Sister's Name was *Doghdon*; she was the youngest, was tall, clumsy and ill-shaped: She was neither handsome nor ugly; at least Twenty-seven Years old, and married the next Year with *Mir-Tehekar*, who had been some Years a Widower, was still young, very rich, and a Man of Distinction; but who had neither a very good, nor very bad Reputation.

Towards the End of this Year died in his Capital City *Ast-Kan*, *Raja* of *Brampour*^d, at the Age of Fourscore, without having any Children. The Dignity of *Raja*, together with his Dominions, descended by Right of Succession to *Ali-Couli-Kan*^e, a Prince of the same Family, but of a different Branch, aged a little above Eighteen. He entered upon the Possession of his

^c Mr. De la Tournelle.
^e The Prince of Sultzbach.

^d The Elector Palatine.

his Dominions in a very critical Juncture, and at an Age when Men are not always governed by Prudence. He acted nevertheless very wisely, and would take no Share in the Broils which disturbed the Empire of *Mogul*[†], but so far as was necessary to restore its Tranquillity.

The War was still continued vigorously by Sea between *China*[‡] and *Japan*. The two Nations took frequently Ships from each other, and by the Accounts that were published it appeared, that the *Japanese*, tho' much superior by Sea, lost more Vessels than the *Chinese*. It is true indeed, that if *China* had kept the Sea with a Fleet, and ventured a Fight, she would in all Probability have been beat. But she only sent out several small Squadrons, which cruizing here and there, molested the *Japanese* much more, than if they had been united. This War cost the two Nations immense Sums, especially the *Japanese*, whose Coasts not being defended by Forts, could not be protected but by a vast Number of Ships; which being added to the Supplies with which they furnished the Queen of *Golconda*, put them to a most prodigious Expence. But as they were immensely rich, and had in their Industry, their Trade, and the Constitution of their State infinite Resources; whatsoever Expences they were at, or what Losses soever they suffered, they were much less in Proportion than those of *China*, which had not the same Advantages. Among other Undertakings, the *Japanese* attempted to make themselves Masters of a Sea-Port Town of *China*, in which

[†] Germany.

[‡] Spain.

which very great Riches were lodged for Security's Sake : They had made prodigious Préparations for that Expedition, but it did not prove successful ; they were obliged to retire with Loss ; and Sickness, together with bad Weather, compleated the Destruction of the Crew of their Vessels. But their very Losses encouraged them to make greater Efforts still ; and the World saw with Astonishment new Fleets sail out of the Ports of *Japan*, more numerous, and more formidable, than those of the preceeding Years : So great is the Power of that Empire ! So wonderful the Courage of that Nation !

In the mean time, *Ismael-Beg's* ^h Health was daily declining ; his old Age, an habitual Distemper, which Age rendered more dangerous still, fore-boded an approaching Death. He fell very often into a very bad Condition ; his Physicians having warned him by no Means to apply himself to Business, he meddled as little as he could with publick Affairs, and passed the greatest Part of his Time at a Country Seat four Miles distant from *Is-pahan* ⁱ. The Ministers went thither daily to give him an Account, and receive his Orders. *Ibben* ^k, who, as we have observed, succeeded *Osman* ^l in the Direction of War Affairs, being come thither one Morning, worked some Hours with *Ismael-Beg* ; and whither he was indisposed before, or through an excessive Application, he was so ill when he came out, that his Life was despaired of. The *Iman Hafâi*, a Man

^h Cardinal De Fleury.
Breteuil, Minister of War.

ⁱ Paris. ^k Mr. De
^l Mr. d'Angervilliers.

M
an
per
dee
wa
for
ben
spe
dea
suc
nex
and
it,
feer
tha
wou
T
Nea
mer
Hon
had
tho
ble
mer
and
Mer
tima
had
ly f
not
Vie
and
ploy

m
of C
Son.

Man whom *Ismael-Beg* reposed his Trust in, and who owed his Fortune to him, fearing perhaps, lest this Accident should make too deep an Impression upon the *Athemadoulet*^m, who was in too bad a State of Health not to fear for him, gave not the least Assistance to *Ibben*, and caused him to be carried with all speed to *Ispahan*, where he arrived, already dead according to some, or, as others say, in such a desperate Condition, that he died the next Day. His Death made a great Noise, and *Hafdy* was publickly enough charged with it, and accused of Inhumanity. His Conduct seemed the more odious, as it was asserted that if *Ibben* had had timely Assistance, his Life would have been saved.

There were many Candidates for his Place: *Neamed*ⁿ, the Son of *Daracha*, whom we have mentioned under the Administration of *Ali-Homajou*^o, carried it. He was tall, well shaped, had beautiful Features, an agreeable Look, though somewhat inclining to Sadness, a noble Gate, a sprightly Wit, but no great Judgment, a superficial Knowledge of many things; and as he spoke readily and well, he deceived Men at first. He had been for a long time intimate with Prince *Jesseing*^p. His Ambition had no Bounds: He was said to have so strongly solicited for *Ibben*'s Place, which he was not thought capable to fill up, with no other View but to have a Foot in the Ministry, and to be nearer at hand to obtain the Employment of *Divan-Beghi*^q. This new Minister

^m Prime Minister. ⁿ M. D'Argenson. ^o The Duke of Orleans the late Regent. ^p The Duke of Orleans's Son. ^q Of Chancellor.

ster behaved himself with so much Artifice, that he came to have a great Credit with *Cha-Sephi*^r.

Ismael-Beg died a few Months after: He suffered a great while, and with a great Constancy. He kept his Knowledge almost to the last Gasp. The *Sophi*^r visited him twice during his Illness, and they were a long while shut up together. It is asserted, that in these Conferences, *Ismael-Beg*, as he was giving his Master an Account of the State of the Kingdom, and of what he thought proper to be done in the Circumstances *Asia*^t was in, endeavoured to alienate him from *Muzain*^u, a *Moullah* of a great deal of Wit, who he was afraid should be appointed his Successor, though he had always seemed to live in a good Understanding with him, and had given him, they say, more than bare Hopes of having a great Share in the Administration. *Ismael-Beg* died to the great Satisfaction of many, but lamented by the *Sophi*, who erected a stately Tomb to him, which will be a constant Memorial of his good Heart and Gratitude.

This *Athemadoulet* had for above sixteen Years, absolutely governed *Cha-Sephi*^w and the whole State. The small Estate he left, was a Proof of his being void of Self-interest: But he had taken Care to provide plentifully for his Relations; a Method of establishing the Fortune of one's Friends upon a solid Foundation, which is the more artful, as it is more noble, more pompous, more agreeable to Self-love, and not liable to those Suspicions, from which a rich Inheritance of

^r Lewis XV. ^s *The French King.* ^t Europe.
^u Cardinal De Tencin. ^w Lewis XV.

of a Minister does generally create. His Ambition having prompted him to procure a Place of *Mebter* *, to one of his Nephews; he had the Vexation to see that the other *Mebters* were but little inclined to admit amongst them a Man, whom they judged unworthy of a Post, to which they said a noble Birth alone could give a Man a Right to pretend. *Cha-Sepbi* forced them to submit; but all his Authority could not prevent them from seizing with Eagerness every Opportunity they could, to give their new Brother all the Disgust and Vexation that lay in their Power.

Ismael-Beg, as a private Man, had many excellent Qualities; as he had a bright and delicate Wit, his Conversation was easy and amusing; his Repartees were quick and sprightly: He was humane, honest, very regular in his Manners, a good Relation, and a kind Master: But he was artful, dissembling, revengeful, and no substantial Friend.

As a Statesman, he was too easily prepossessed, too little upon his Guard against Informers, ridiculously fond of the Ambition of being esteemed a great Minister, even by Foreigners; too saving, too jealous of his Power, too little acquainted with the Nature of true Glory, to be able to support his Master's in a proper time. He had but indifferent Talents for the Government of a large Kingdom, because he wanted that extensive and strong Genius, which seizes and embraces in a Moment all the Objects, apprehends their strong and weak Sides, perceives their Advantages and Inconveniencies, and always makes the best of them for

* *The Dignity of a Duke and Peer.*

for the Good of the State. By pretending to be a great Lover of Peace, he had imposed upon several Powers, whilst he was all the time intriguing in many Courts and laboured underhand to disturb the Tranquillity of *Asia*^y by Wars, in which he did not design to engage himself, whatever Hopes he might give to take a Share in them. He cast a Blemish on the *Sophi's* Reputation, by breaking a Treaty, which he had made him imprudently sign some Years before, with the House of *Delly*^z, to the Prejudice of other Treaties anterior to that, and made with other Princes; and he disgraced the *Persian* Name by the Weakness of the Forces he employed to make good the Infringement of that Treaty. When he entered into the Administration, he found the Government in the utmost Disorder, and retrieved it in a little Time; an Epoch very glorious to his Memory: But he wanted Capacity to improve the Opportunities, that offered to enlarge the Power of *Persia*, or to foresee such as might offer afterwards. In a word, the great Events which happened during his Administration, opened him a fine and large Carrier of of Glory, which, to the Shame and Prejudice of the Nation, he was not capable to run.

Immediately after the Death of *Ismael-Beg*, *Cha-Sepi*^a declared that he would govern by himself: And accordingly, he applied himself intirely to the Care of the State, and fixed the Hours for his Ministers to work with him. This Resolution was very much and justly applauded: But People could not believe that he

^y Europe. ^z Austria. He means the Pragmatick Sanction, which the French King signed; and infringed soon after. ^a Lewis XV.

he
kno
ranc
Affa
chur
ther
heav
Intri
one
tend
ber v
infer
Capa
Engl
self,
had c
up a
with
let^c;
rial
seize
and
Weig
It m
bad t
prude
who
extre
vised
spoile
Hope
the S
This
Prete
ry, f

^b C
King.

he would persist in it. The little Taste he was known to have for Business, and the Ignorance in which he was always kept of State Affairs, made it be judged, that he would soon chuse a Person, on whom he should disburthen himself of a Load which was thought too heavy for him. Upon this Foundation great Intrigues were carrying on at Court; every one of those who imagined, they might pretend to that Place of Trust (and their Number was not small, for no Man thinks himself inferior to another with regard to Genius and Capacity) every one, I say, began to set his Engines to work. Even *Cosfrou*^b flattered himself, that he might be restored to the Post he had once filled. In order to succeed, he drew up a long Memorial, in which he blamed, without any Discretion, the late *Athemadoul*^c; he found means to transmit that Memorial into the Hands of the *Sophi*^d, who was seized with Indignation against the Author, and would have made him feel the whole Weight of it, if they had not pacified him. It must be confessed, that *Cosfrou* took a very bad time, and was guilty of the utmost Imprudence, by pretending to censure a Man, who was scarce cold, and whose Memory was extremely dear to *Cha-Sephi*^e. He was ill advised, and worse served. His Precipitation spoiled all; and suppose there had been some Hope for him, he lost it by the manner in which the *Sophi* expressed himself upon his Account. This bad Success, far from disheartening the Pretenders, encouraged them, on the contrary, so much the more, as they had dreaded

I 2

Cos-

^b Chauvelin. ^c Prime Minister. ^d The French King. • Lewis XV.

Casrou and his Party. But the *Sopbi* did not shew a liking for any Person, exclusive of the rest, except perhaps for *Rhedi*^f, whose Credit increased considerably by the Care he took to furnish the necessary Funds for the Expences the *Sopbi* made in beautifying his Country Seat. One Day amongst others, *Rhedi* paid his Court most dexterously. *Cha-Sepbi* having spent some Hours with him at that same Seat, in treating of Business, suffered him to go away, without mentioning to him an Estimate of some Additions that were to be made to that Seat, the Expence of which was to amount to about twenty-seven thousand *Tomans*^g. His natural Bashfulness, and the immense Sums he was obliged to spend in the present Situation of Affairs, did not suffer him to deliver it himself into *Rhedi*'s Hands, whose Remonstrances he probably dreaded. But as soon as he was gone, he gave that Estimate to one of his *Eunuchs*^h, commanding him to deliver it immediately to *Rhedi*, and to tell him that the *Sopbi* forgot to give it him. *Rhedi* read it that very Moment, and seeing what was the Matter, he returned immediately into *Cha-Sepbi*'s Apartment, and told him he was surprized at the smallness of the Sum, that he had reckon'd upon a much larger Sum, and had taken proper Measures to furnish thirty-five thousand *Tomans*ⁱ. The *Sopbi* was enchanted with the Zeal and Complaisance of his Minister, and took it so much the more kindly, as he did not expect

^f Mr. Orri, Comptroller General of the Finances.
^g 54,000 Pounds Sterling, or about 1,215,000 French Livres. ^h Attendants. ⁱ 70,000 Pounds Sterling, or about 1,575,000 French Livre.

expect it. This Trifle ingratiated *Rbedi* very much with his Master : So true it is, that with great Men, every thing depends from a critical Minute ! *Cofrou* misses it and compleats his Ruin ; *Rbedi* seizes it, and encreases his Favour.

Whilst these things were transacting in *Persia*^k, they lamented in the Empire of *Mogul*^l, the Death of *Nabal-Abel-Kan*, *Raja* of *Guzarate*^m, who died in his Capital City, at the Age of three-score and eighteen Years. It was a Loss, considering the Circumstances the Empire was in. The *Grande*es of *Guzarate* elected in his Stead *Mir-Kassem-Kan*. As his own Interest required that he should keep Neuter, amongst the Disputes that divided the Empire, he shewed at his Accession to his Dignity, no Inclination for one Party preferably to the other. Some time after he seemed to favour the Queen of *Golconda*ⁿ a little, at which the Emperor was very much displeased. As the Power of this *Raja* is less considerable by his Armies, than by the Authority his Dignity gives him, his Alliance is not of great Weight in time of War.

Some Months after died at *Ispahan*^o Princess *Roxana*^p, Mother to *Mirza-Haddi*, at the Age of three-score and ten. She died extremely rich, but by her Death she left the Party of *Cofrou*^q in a manner without a Head.

As the Neutrality, to which the King of *Cochinchina*^r had engaged himself, was only the Effect of the Fear he was under lest the *Japone*se should make a Descent into his Dominions, it did not hinder him from sending to

I 3

Segedin

^k France.

^l Germany.

^m The Elector of

Mentz.

ⁿ Hungary.

^o Paris.

^p The

Dutchess of Bourbon.

^q Chauvelin.

^r Naples.

Segedin * some Regiments, which were said to be the same *Gelaleddin* † had formerly sent for the Conquest of *Cochinchina*, and which having always been in that Emperor's Pay, were obliged to march at his Command. In vain did the Court of *Japan* complain of that Step, as being an Infraction of the Neutrality, no other Satisfaction could be obtained: That Court was obliged to be content, at least, in Appearance, the rather, as some Time after, *Olabi* † withdrew the Artillery and Ammunition, which he he had sent the Year before for the Service of the *Chinese* †: But this Prince continued inactive so long a time only as was necessary to secure his Coast against all Attempts, and to put his Sea-ports in so good a State of Defence, as to have nothing to fear from the *Japonesse*. These Precautions being taken, he raised a powerful Army, and marched in Person to the Assistance of *Segedin*. Prince *Negeddin*'s * Success in the Dominions of *Korsula* †, the Desire of contributing to the Settlement of a Brother, a most natural Sentiment! the repeated Sollicitations of the Courts of *China* and *Persia* †, and a strong Aversion to the House of *Delly* †, all this, I say, determined the King of *Cochinchina* † to break his Neutrality. The Junction of the *Cochinchinese* did not produce all the Effects that were expected from it. The *Dellians* were still the strongest, and all that could be done was to keep on the defensive till towards the End of the following Year, when the *Dellian* General retired to post himself after such a manner, as to be

* M. De Gages. † The King of Spain. † Don Carlos, King of Naples and Sicily. † Spaniards.
 * Don Philip. † The King of Sardinia. † Spain
 and France. † Austria. † Naples.

be at hand to support the King of *Necbal*^c, and to cover the Principality of *Bengale*^d, which it was feared might be soon invaded, considering the Progress the *Chinese* and *Persians* had made. And it would probably have been invaded, had not the Severity of the Weather, as we have already observed, obliged them to raise the Siege of a strong Town^e, situated almost in the Heart of the Dominions of *Korsula*^f.

Chabaskan^g had however some Thoughts of a Peace, and caused now and then Propositions to be made to the Queen of *Golconda*^h: which she constantly rejected, being determined not to hearken to a particular Peace: A Conduct, which made her Enemies say, that she wanted to prolong the War for ever: But this Conduct of hers was so much the more just towards her Allies, as, without their Assistance, she would not have been able to defend herself. The Necessity and Efficacy of that Assistance afforded a large Field to the Friends of *Nagar*ⁱ, who inferred from thence, that the Dominions of the House of *Delly*^k, even kept undivided, were weaker than the Powers confederated against her. A Consequence which was false with regard to Men, since the numerous Armies raised by the Queen of *Golconda*, proved that her Dominions swarmed with Soldiers; but a true Consequence as to the Want of Money, which put it really out of her Power to employ them without a Supply of Money.

The States and Princes of the Empire were divided, some favouring the Emperor of *Mo-*

I 4

gul

^c Sard'nia. ^d The Milanese. ^e Coni. ^f The present King of Sardinia.

^g The late Elector of Bavaria, and Emperor.

^h The Queen of Hungary.

ⁱ The same.

^k Austria.

*gul*¹, and others the Queen of *Golconda*, according as their Inclination or their Interest led them. Thus that Body, so powerful and formidable, was working its Ruin, by tearing its own Entrails, and was forging the Chains, with which, its Blindness did not suffer it to foresee, that the conquering Party would one Day load it.

It was not the Empire of *Mogul* alone that Discord had infected with her poisonous Breath: The Empire of *Russia*, and the Kingdom of *Falekeldar*^m had had their Share of it: They carried on a cruel War against each other, to which *Ismael-Beg*ⁿ was said to have excited the *Falekeldarians*, with a Design, no Doubt, to keep *Russia* employed, and to deprive the Queen of *Golconda* of the Assistance she might have expected from it, by the Intercession of the Emperor of *Japan*, who had a great Credit at that Court. That War proved from the Beginning to the End disadvantageous to the *Falekeldarians*, and might have been fatal to them, if the Empress of *Russia* had not been so generous as to listen to the Proposals of Peace that were made her, and to which she was favourably disposed by the Offer that was made her to raise one of her near Relations to the Throne of *Falekelder*, which was elective. Two Generals paid with their Heads (a Punishment attended with Infamy in *Falekeldar*) for the ill Success of that War. The utmost Endeavours were used to save their Lives, especially of one of them, named *Negef-Couli-Beg*^o, who

¹ *The late Emperor Charles VII. of the House of Bavaria.* ^m *Sweden.* ⁿ *Cardinal De Fleuri.* ^o *General Leuwenhaupt.*

who proved, that he had not yet joined, nor could join the *Jalekeldarian* Army, when it was routed by the *Russians*. Nothing was capable to conquer the Animosity of the greatest Number of the Members of the State, who had that Misfortune at Heart. The two Generals were executed. The unfortunate *Negef-Couli-Beg*, the Day before his Execution attempted to make his Escape: He succeeded, at least, in part; but unlucky Accidents, which it is not in the Power of human Prudence to foresee, having prevented him from going far enough not to be re-taken, he was known, and brought back into the Capital City, where he was beheaded the next Day. The Nation's Hatred expired with him, and that great Man was generally lamented. A sad and remarkable Instance of the Ingratitude and Inconstancy of the Multitude.

Towards the Beginning of this Year, some *Japonese* Men of War, and a Fire-ship appeared before a neutral Port, into which was retired a *Chinese* ^p Man of War of seventy Guns, commanded by *Hassein*, a *Persian* ^q Officer of an uncommon Intrepidity. Two *Japonese* Ships, leaving the rest behind, entered into the Harbour and summoned *Hassein* to surrender. That brave Officer answered only by a Discharge of his Artillery: But seeing that notwithstanding this, the *Japonese* persisted in their Design, and that the Commandant of the Fort took no Measures to defend him, he landed his Crew, put fire to his Ship and blew it up. The Sick perished with it, a sad Accident indeed, but forced by Necessity, the little

I 5

Time:

^p Spanish.^q French.

Time there was not being sufficient to carry them on Shore.

In the mean time, the Queen of *Golconda* had a numerous Army on the *Indus*^r, commanded by Prince *Salcher*^s, who threatned to pass that River, and to return to the *Persians* Invasion for Invasion, by carrying the War into their own Dominions. There was so much the more Reason to fear that this Project would succeed, as *Nagar*^t and her Allies had got together higher up a large Army in the Neighbourhood of *Amadabat*^u, which, it was thought, designed to join Prince *Salcher*. In order to disappoint these Projects, *Cha-Sepbi* put *Ibbi*^w, at the Head of fifty-five thousand Men, designed to prevent that Junction, and he gave near as many to *Seif*^x, with Orders to defend the Passage of the *Indus*, and to cover the Provinces that lie near it.

Ibbi passed the *Indus*, and advanced towards the River *Emni*^y, with a Design to seize upon an advantageous Post: But being prevented by *Haider*, a most active *Japonesse* General, he posted himself on the Banks of the River *Emni*, over which he threw two Bridges in order to keep the Passage free, and to be in a Condition to take an Advantage of the Motions of the confederate Army, which was encamped on the other Side of the River. The Emperor of *Japan* had just put himself at the Head of that Army, where one of his Sons, named *Mir-Kassem*, was arrived before him. The Bodies
of

^r *The Rhine.* ^s *Charles.* ^t *The Queen of Hungary.*
^u *Francfort.* ^w *Noailles.* ^x *Cogni.*
^y *The Main.*

of the several Nations, which composed that Army, were commanded by brave and experienced Generals of their respective Nations: *Haider* commanded the *Japonefe*; and those Troops that were in their Pay. The *Delians* were commanded by *Faber* and *Mamat*. Both Armies observed each other for some Days. At last the Allies made a Motion on their Right, by marching up the River, in order, as some say, to draw near a Reinforcement of twenty thousand *Ceylanese* ^z, who were advancing; or according to others, to be at Hand for getting Provisions and Forage, of which they were absolutely in Want. Thereupon *Ibbi*, who had Intelligence of their Motion, caused immediately thirty-thousand Men to pass the River; the Foot over two Bridges, and the Horse by Fording, with a Design to fall on the Rear of the Enemy, and to defeat it. *Haider*, observing *Ibbi*'s Proceeding, and concluding from thence that the whole *Persian* Army was passing the River, drew up immediately the *Japonefe* in Order of Battle; for these made up the Rear, whilst Orders were sent to the Van-guard to come back with all Speed. The *Persians* having marched through a Defile, which hindered them from perceiving the Dispositions made by the Enemy, were surprised when they arrived in the Plain, to find them in Order of Battle. But as they were too far advanced to draw back again, and reckoned to have to do only with the Rear, they marched boldly up to the *Japonefe*, to whose Fire, which was dreadful, they were exposed. The *Persians*, whose Ranks were considerably thinned, were
put

^z Dutch.

put into some Confusion, and lost Ground: Their Leaders rallied them, made them make a second Attack, which did not prove more successful than the former, and finally a third, which did not succeed better, the *Dellians* being now come up. *Mirgi-Mola*^a, Son to Prince *Jesseing*, *Miram*^b, younger Brother to *Mirza-Haddi*, the two Sons of *Soliman* and *Sevagi*, performed Wonders: Some Regiments of Foot fought very bravely, but were ill-seconded by a Corps of Infantry, considerable by its Number, and distinguished by the Rank it has in the *Persian* Militia. This Corps having given Ground at the third Charge, communicated its Fright to the greatest Part of the Infantry, which run away, and left the Cavalry, which was obliged to maintain a running Fight, under a very great Disadvantage. This Cavalry consisted of the choice Troops of *Cha-Sephi's* Army, behaved very well, and suffered exceedingly. The *Japonese* themselves owned, that the Courage with which that Body attacked them, surpris'd them, and that they had been lost, if it had sustained the third Discharge with the same Intrepidity; or if the Infantry had not forsaken it; or finally, if the *Dellians* were not arriv'd very opportunely. They, who run to save themselves, imagining they had the Enemy at their Heels, threw themselves into the River, where many of them were drowned. In this Action, which continued four Hours and an half, the *Persians* lost a great Number of Men, and in particular many brave Officers, who seeing their Regiments turn their Back to the Enemy, put themselves in

^a *The Duke of Chartres.* ^b *The Count of Clermont.*

in a Line, and chose rather to die honourably, by standing their Ground, than to run away shamefully.

The Allies, who suffered very much from the Artillery of the *Persians*, and imagined that their whole Army had passed the River, did not think proper to pursue them; they apprehended, very likely, that the Ambition of gaining a greater Advantage, might make them lose that, which they had already gained. They contented themselves with remaining on the Field of Battle till the next Day in the Afternoon, when they decamped, and, what is very singular, they abandoned their Wounded, and some Cannon. It was however said, that if they had taken an Advantage of the Confusion the *Persians* were in, and had attempted to pass the River, they might have gained a compleat Victory; so much was the *Persian* Army frightened.

Mir-Kassem, Son to the Emperor of *Japan*, having, though wounded, observed on the Field of Battle, a *Persian* Officer all covered with Wounds, and whose Bravery he had taken Notice of during the Battle, ordered him to be carried into his own Tent, and would have his Wounds dressed before his own. An Action so much the more Praise-worthy, as that young Prince neglected his own Person to bestow all his Cares on an Enemy, who was very much beneath him, but whose great Courage had made respectable to him.

Some Days after the Retreat of the Allies, *Ibbi* ^a decamped, crossed the *Indus* ^b again, and shut himself up within formidable Lines, which
he

^a *Marshal* De Noailles.

^b *The* *Rbine*.

he left afterwards, in order to draw nearer to *Seif*^c, who wanted to be supported, and to cover at the same Time those Provinces, upon which *Salcher*^d was known to have a Design. This Prince had opened the Campaign with Success: One of *Cha-Baskan*'s^e Generals routed another, incapable to keep the Field, *Visapouran*^f subdued, a Suspension of Arms lately agreed upon between the Emperor and the Queen of *Golconda*^g, the Neutrality which the Troops of the Emperor had just engaged upon; a famous *Persian* Captain taken Prisoner with his whole Troop; *Nessir*^h driven from Post to Post; all the Towns, which the *Persians*ⁱ had seized upon, taken again; the Necessity to which the *Sophi*^k had been reduced of withdrawing all his Troops out of the Empire of *Mogul*^l: These were as many Trophies for *Saleber*. In Consequence of these Advantages, he was marched towards the *Indus*^m, and made such Dispositions as shewed that he designed to pass it. *Seif*, being intrenched on the opposite Bank of that River, the Passage of which was defended by several Bodies of Troops posted at some Distance from each other, observed the Enemy's Motions, who gave him frequent Alarms. At last *Salcher* resolved one Night to attempt a Passage by two different Places at once. He had caused a Bridge to be built, which reached to an Island formed by Nature in the middle of the *Indus*: He passed over

^c *Marshal De Coigni.*

^d *Prince Charles.*

^e *The late Emperor Charles VII. Elector of Bavaria.*

^f *Bavaria.*

^g *Hungary.*

^h *Marshal De*

Broglie.

ⁱ *French.*

^k *The French King.*

^l *Germany.*

^m *The Rhine.*

over that Bridge, and notwithstanding the continual Fire of the *Persians* posted in the Island, he seated himself in it with about twelve thousand Men. In the mean time *Kaluced*^a, one of his Generals, at the Head of three thousand choice Men, whom he put into Boats, made another Attempt over against a Post defended by *Kasamir*, a brave and experienced General-Officer, who forced him to retire with Loss. *Kaluced* signalized himself on that Occasion, and would perhaps have succeeded, had any other but *Kasamir* defended that Post. This Attempt having miscarried, *Salcher* had no other View but to keep the Island, to drive the *Persians* out of it, and to compleat the Passage. *Seif* was not strong enough to oppose an Enemy much superior to him, and besides this, his Troops were extremely fatigued: This determined the *Sophi* to make *Ibbi* march to support him. The Allies followed that General, and by the Way levelled with the Ground the Lines he had abandoned; after which, the Season being pretty much advanced, they crossed the *Indus* again, and separated. On the other Hand, *Salcher* finding it impossible to execute his Project, since the Arrival of *Ibbi*, and fearing the overflowing of the River, retired, and put his Army into Winter-Quarters. Some Weeks after *Kasamir*, taking an Advantage of the *Dellian's* Retreat, passed the *Indus*^o with a considerable Body, raised again the Works in an Island different from that we have been speaking of, and provided it with Soldiers and Ammunition: This Expedition was

^a *Prince Waldeck.*

^o *The Rhine.*

was reckoned contrary to the Treaties, but was thought necessary for Reasons of War.

Not long before this, a *Golcondian* General ^p, whom Fortune and his savage Valour had raised from an obscure Condition, to high Degrees in the Army, penetrated at the Head of a desperate Troop and eager after Plunder, into the Principality of *Tatta* ^q, that same Province, which was yielded in full Sovereignty to *Persia* ^r, by the Treaty of *Gebanabad* ^s: He committed there all Sorts of Outrages, and dispersed a Writing designed to encourage the People to a Rebellion, and to put themselves again under the Government of their Ancient Masters. Large Contributions which he required, and a considerable Booty, where all the Advantages he gained by that Invasion, for which he might have paid dear, had he not made Haste to retire, upon the Notice he received that a large Body of *Persians* was coming, in order to fall upon him.

Whilst these Things were transacting in *Asia* ^t, *Russia* was very near suffering a new Revolution; the Scheme of which was to unthrone the Empress, and call back the young Emperor. Some of the Conspirators were arrested, amongst whom were several Ladies of the Court; eight of them being sentenced to Death, the Empress gave them their Lives, but they had their Tongues cut off and were banished. The Queen of *Golconda*'s ^u Minister at that Court, was positively charged by the Empress, with being concerned in that Conspiracy, and with promising Assistance to the discontented. She demanded Satisfaction

^p Colonel Mentzel. ^q Lorrain. ^r France.
^s Vienna. ^t Europe. ^u Hungary.

tisfaction from *Nagar* ^w, whose Interest it was to have a great Regard for the Empress; so that she made Haste to give her the Satisfaction she desired; for the Minister cleared himself. But what Impressions do not such Accusations leave behind them, especially after the Discovery *Selatiheb* ^x had made, soon after her Accession to the Throne, of the suspicious Correspondence between her Ministers, and those of *Golconda*: It seems there was a kind of Spell upon that Empress, which exposed her to dangerous Intrigues: For the next Year *Sydameck* ^y, whom *Cha-Sepbi* ^z, with a Design to break the Measures of the Queen of *Golconda* and her Allies, had lately sent back into *Russia*, with the Title of Embassador, which he had there two Years before, was charged with Designs much of the same Kind, and commanded by the Empress to leave the Capital City within four and twenty Hours, and the whole Kingdom in eight Days. His Papers were seized, in which was found, they say, a Project of an approaching Revolution. There was however this Difference, that *Selatiheb* ^a did not require from the *Sophi* ^b, any Satisfaction for *Sydameck*'s Conduct: A Difference, which gave room to question the Truth of the Accusation, and rather to suspect that Lord of a Behaviour more injurious to *Selatiheb*'s Person, than to her Crown, and so much the more outrageous, as she had loaded him with Favours, and used him with an uncommon Distinction. Perhaps also, some jealous Persons, to whom he gave but too much handle, by his

^w *The Queen of Hungary.*

^x *The Czarina.*

^y *Mr. De la Chetardie.*

^z *King Lewis XV.*

^a *The Czarina.*

^b *The French King.*

his excessive Inclination for the fair Sex, and by his Want of Circumspection in his amorous Intrigues, found Means to asperse his Reputation, and thus to exasperate that Princess against him: However that be, his Crime must have been very great, since he was obliged to return whatever he had received from the Empress's Generosity, and even those Marks of Honour, which she had bestowed upon him at the Time of his former Embassy. He was succeeded by a Man, who had made a long Stay in *Russia*, and understood the Language of the Country, but who wanted, they say, the Qualifications requisite in a Minister of the first Rank.

Zelim ^c, who had been for some Years Ambassador from *Persia* at the Court of the King of *Corea* ^d, was lately returned Home. The *Sophi* ^e sent him to the Emperor *Cha-Baskan* ^f, to execute an important Commission, which was a Pretence to carry on secret Negotiations with some Princes of the Empire of *Mogul* ^g, and to give them such Hints as related to the present Situation of Affairs. *Zelim* was a great Politician, and perhaps the ablest Negotiator in all *Asia* ^h. He had, even with Foreigners, a great Reputation, which he justly deserved. He was of an easy Conversation, a solid Friend, prudent, of a singular Penetration, free from Ambition, and from that haughty and assuming Air, which would become true Merit alone, but which true Merit never takes. He had a pleasing Countenance, an agreeable and sweet Air, a cold Access, was tall, and a little round-shoulder'd :

^c Mr. De Chavigni.
French King.
Elector of Bavaria.

^d Portugal.
^e The late Emperor Charles VII.
^f Germany.
^g Europe.

shoulder'd : This was not the only Journey he took to *Amadabat*ⁱ : As he was in a manner the last Resource of *Persia*, he was sent thither again the next Year.

Prince *Mirgi-Mola*^k, at his Return from the Army on the *Indus*^l to *Ispahan*^m, married *Fulvia*, Sister to *Morat-Bakche*ⁿ, a Princess about eighteen Years old, beautiful, well-shaped, of a charming Character, and a sprightly and delicate Wit. The Prince her Spouse was almost of the same Age, handsome enough, but prodigiously clumsy ; of a Temper sometimes troublesome, and of such a Genius as People did not care to speak of. For the rest, he was good-natured and humane, though upon the whole but little generous. When still but a Child he had given the greatest Hopes, which he would probably have answered, if the second Person who was charged with the Care of this Prince's Education, had followed the Steps of the first, who was intrusted with it. So true it is, that with regard to Education, the Change of Masters generally turns to the Disadvantage of the Pupil.

During the Winter, *Persia*^o made very great Preparations, both by Land and by Sea, for the ensuing Campaign, which she opened very soon, at least, by Sea. The second Month in the Year her Ships sailed out of one of her Harbours, into which some *Chinese*^p Vessels had taken Sanctuary the Year before, and where they had been in a Manner blockaded ever since by a *Japonese* Fleet. The *Chinese* being determined

ⁱ Francfort. ^k The Duke of Chartres. ^l The Rhine.
^m Paris. ⁿ The Prince of Conti.
^o France. ^p Spanish.

determined to fight the *Japoneſe*, though much ſuperior to them, if they appeared, ſet ſail in Company with the *Persians*. The *Japoneſe* Admiral appeared at Noon in Order of Battle, and attacked the *Chineſe*, who had the *Vanguard* of the combined Fleet. The *Chineſe* fought with the greateſt Courage, and ſuffered very much, having been alone expoſed, during three Hours, to the Fire of the *Japoneſe*. Their Admiral eſpecially ſignalized himſelf; his Ship was extremely ſhattered, but he had the Glory to ſhoot the Maſts, and to diſable entirely the *Japoneſe* Admiral, who could take but one ſingle Ship, which was even retaken afterwards. The Fight continued five Hours, with an un-expreſſible Obſtinacy on the Part of the *Japoneſe*, who had the Advantage of the Wind. The *Persian* Admiral did not fight but toward the End of the Battle, an extraordinary Proceeding, ſo much the more to be blamed, that if they had ſeconded the *Chineſe* at firſt, it is very probable that the *Japoneſe* Admiral would have been defeated, his Rear-Admiral, between whom and him there was no good Underſtanding, being at a great Diſtance from him with his Diviſion, which was, at leaſt, one third Part of the Fleet, and not at Hand to aſſiſt him. The *Japoneſe*, though ſeveral of their Ships were very much ſhattered, and eſpecially their Admiral, remained Maſters of the Field of Battle, and the combined Fleet retired into the Ports of *China*. The *Persian* Admiral did all that lay in his Power, to juſtify himſelf; but no regard was paid to it, and he was put out of Favour: Too mild a Punishment in the Opinion of the Publick.

Muzaim,

Mu
endea
noxio
ſerved
in the
of W
but m
in a v
Years
brisk
and w
ever
durin
Impr
ted o
he ha
out r
poneſe
ſtanti
the r
from
Head
ny
lates
well,
envie
the S
much
The
to li
been
zaim
in n
ther

c

c Le

Muzaim ^c, that *Moullah*, whom *Ismael-Beg* ^d endeavoured, before his Death, to render obnoxious to *Cha-Sepbi* ^e, as we have already observed, had at last found Means to get a Seat in the *Sophi's* Councils. He had a great deal of Wit, he was as pliant as his Predecessor, but more subtle, more enterprising, more active, in a word, more capable. He was at least sixty Years old; lean, of a middling Size: He had brisk Eyes, a cunning Look, a seducing Tongue, and was possessed of the Art of persuading whatever he pleased. He had had many Intrigues during his Life, some of which had given bad Impressions of him, which were not yet blotted out of the Mind of some People; so that he had many Enemies, both within and without the Dominions of the *Sophi*; and the *Japonefe* dreaded him. Otherwise he was a substantial Friend, and the more he was known, the more he was esteemed. He was not free from Ambition, and wished much to be at the Head of the Administration; where, in many Respects, and especially as to what relates to Politicks, he would have behaved very well, whatever his Enemies, and those who envied him might say. He had the Glory of the State at Heart, but was perhaps a little too much prepossessed in favour of his own Schemes. They ascribed one to him, which *Persia* brought to light at the Time of the Sea-Fight we have been mentioning. That Scheme, which *Muzaim* ^f was very capable to imagine, consisted in making a Descent in *Japan*, and to cause there a Revolution in Favour of a Prince, whose

^c Cardinal De Tencin.

^d Cardinal De Fleuri.

^e Lewis XV.

^f Cardinal De Tencin.

whose Grand-father had formerly been seated on the Throne of that Empire, which the Male-contents forced him to abandon.

Nothing was omitted to secure the Success of so great an Undertaking. They caused the *Chinese* and *Persian* Ships, we have spoke of, to sail out of the Harbours, not doubting but the *Japaneſe* Admiral would take hold of that Opportunity to engage in Battle: This was all the *Persians* wanted, because that Fight would give time to execute the Descent in *Japan*, and tho' the *Japaneſe* should gain the Victory, yet they would not be in a Condition to fly to the Assistance of their Country, (it being morally impossible that they should not suffer very much in an Action that was to be very hot) or at least, they could not arrive but too late. These Arguments were very just and grounded on a daily Experience of what happens in Sea-Fights. They had fitted out in other Ports several Ships, which were said to be intended for quite another Expedition than that of *Japan*. They had put on board those Ships a great Quantity of Arms and warlike Stores; these Ships were ordered to put into a Sea-port Town, where several Troops had been assembled to make the intended Descent. Secrecy, which is the Soul of great Undertakings, had been so well kept, that the Commanders themselves did not know what Expedition they were going upon, till the Moment they set out. With the same Precaution a considerable Party had been raised in *Japan*. They had sent from a very distant Country to *Ispahan*, for the young Prince, who was to act the chief Part, and found means to make him pass through
the

the midst of his most formidable Enemies, under a suppositious Name, and attended by a Brother of *Muzaim*; a Circumstance which did not a little contribute to make People believe that this *Moullah* was the Author of the Scheme. In the Night of a publick Rejoicing, which it was purposely reported that *Cha-Sephi* would honour with his Presence, and at which many People were persuaded that he really assisted, that Monarch had a secret Conference with the young Prince, who set out afterwards *Incognito* for the Place of the Embarkation. Every thing answered the *Sophi's* Wishes: The Battle was fought; the *Japanese* Fleet had suffered enough not to be in a Condition to get into the Harbours of *Japan*: The second *Persian* Squadron was in the Road of the Sea-Port Town, whence the Troops were to be transported. The young Prince being arrived there without any accident, they embark, they set sail, and go forwards with the most flattering Hope. But on a sudden a Storm arises, which in a few Hours disperses the whole Fleet, and makes this grand Project miscarry. Such Enterprises require always the utmost dispatch, especially in Winter, when the Inconstancy of the Sea makes every Moment precious. They did not make a quick Dispatch enough in *Persia*, or, to speak more properly, they could not make more; for, notwithstanding the positive Orders that were given, and the just Measures that were taken, some Transports not being able to come in time to the appointed Place, they lost many Days of a favourable Wind. That Delay was not only the Cause which made so material a Project

Project miscarry, but also the Occasion of the Loss of many Men and some Ships. Fortune favoured the *Japoneſe* very much on that Occaſion. They were ſo little upon their Guard, that they had hardly any Ships at home, and fewer Troops ſtill to oppoſe the Enemy. The *Persian* Fleet entered again into its own Harbours to repair the Damages it had received, and the young Prince returned to *Iſpahan*, there to expect, from the Generoſity of *Cha-Sephi*, new Means to make a ſecond Attempt.

Soon after this Event *Tamet* ^z was removed; this Ex-Minifter was but little regretted. Tho' the *Sophi* rewarded him magnificently, in order that his Removal might not ſeem a Diſgrace, yet it was thought there was ſome ſecret Diſcontent. *Cha-Sephi* was ſome time before he gave him a Succeſſor. *Ibbi* ^h was at laſt appointed, and they put under him *Zelim* ⁱ, whom we have already mentioned; a Man, who by his Capacity, and the Reputation he had acquired in ſeveral important Negotiations, deſerved that Place as much as any Perſon whatſoever. They joined with him *Kihelt*, known by his long Experience, by ſome conſiderable Commiſſions he had been truſted with, and by the Treaty of *Gehanabad* ^k. This Diſpoſition did not continue long: Whether it was, that the *Sophi* thought *Ibbi* more uſeful at the Head of his Armies, or for other Reaſons, amongſt which the Publick reckoned, the little Truſt that was ſince a long time repoſed in *Ibbi*, he was removed

^z *M. Amelot, Secretary of State.* ^h *Marſhal De Noailles.* ⁱ *M. De Chavigni.* ^k *Vienna.*

rem
late
Am
in h
adv
had
pref
an
eſpe
Upo
Nea
prof
up v
but
cold
Fam
Chil
Gra
who
the
was
rache
acqu
know
very
very
T
rouſſ
again
of J

1 M
n Lie
D'Ar
Keepe
9 Hur
Autho
again

removed, and *Couton-Cha*¹, a Creature of the late *Athemadoulet*, and who had been some Years Ambassador at the *Ottoman* Court, was chosen in his Stead. As he was already pretty much advanced in Years, and, since his Embassy, had lived upon his Estate in the Country, he preferred his Retirement before the Splendor of an Employment, which he knew was ticklish, especially in the present Situation of Affairs. Upon his Refusal, *Taxis*^m, eldest Brother to *Neamed*, was appointed. He had a sound and profound Judgment, and was very capable to fill up with Reputation all kinds of Employments; but he was less engaging than his Brother, colder and more rough. The *Sopbi* loaded that Family with Honours and Dignities, one of the Children having at that Time got the Place of *Grand-Cadi*ⁿ, from which *Feyde*^o was removed, who was more taken up in Pleasures than with the Functions of his Employment. This Post was in a manner due to the Descendants of *Daracha*^p, Grand-father of the new *Cadi*, who had acquired in it a great Reputation, and who had known how to make of a pretty mean and not very honourable Employment, an eminent and very important Office.

The *Sopbi*, being determined to act vigorously this Campaign, did at last declare War against the Queen of *Golconda*^q, the Emperor of *Japan* and the King of *Necbal*^r. A hundred

¹ M. De Villeneuve. ^m The Marquis D'Argenson.
ⁿ Lieutenant of the Police. ^o M. Herault. ^p M.
 D'Argenson, Lieutenant of the Police, and afterwards
 Keeper of the Seals, mentioned above, p. 8, 9, &c.
^q Hungary. ^r Sardinia. But this is a Mistake of our
 Author: For the French King did not declare War
 against that Prince.

dred thousand Men marched into *Feldran*^s under the Command of *Ibbi* and *Kalife-Sultan*^t. *Seif*^u, at the Head of fifty thousand *Persians*, marched to the Banks of the *Indus*^w, and covered the Provinces situated beyond that River. *Scadeck*^x, who was come again into Favour, was posted with a considerable Body on the River *Ilement*^y, from whence he secured the Principality of *Tatta*^z and the neighbouring Countries. *Rutor-Cha*^a, at the Head of forty thousand Men, was at hand to act as Occasion and Circumstances should require. Besides these several Armies, *Cha-Sephi* had furnished *Cha-Baskan*^b with twenty thousand Men of old Troops, and had sent to *Negeddin*^c a Reinforcement of twenty-two thousand Men, under the Command of *Morat-Bakche*^d, as we have observed when we spoke of *Jesova*^e.

This Year *Cha-Sephi*^t made his first Campaign at the Head of his Army in *Feldran*^s. The *Ceylanese*^b began then to find by Experience, as we have observed above, that, by continuing united with the Queen of *Golconda*ⁱ, they exposed themselves to see those Cities, which had been mortgaged to them by the House of *Delly*^k, taken by the *Persians*^l: For notwithstanding the good Understanding between the *Sophi* and the *Ceylanese*, that Prince besieged some Towns, where the latter kept Gar-

^s Flanders. ^t *Marshal De Noailles and Count De Saxe.*
^u *Marshal De Coigni.* ^w *The Rhine.*
^x *Pelleisle.* ^y *The River Moselle.* ^z *Lorrain.*
^a *M. D'Harcourt.* ^b *The late Elector of Bavaria, and Emperor.*
^c *Don Philip.* ^d *The Prince of Conti.*
^e *Savoy,* ^f *Lewis XV.* ^g *Flanders.* ^h *The Dutch.*
ⁱ *Hungary.* ^k *Austria.* ^l *The French.*

Garrisons, and made himself Master of them, without much Resistance. The Sovereigns of *Ceylan* were not in a Humour to make their Soldiers fall a Sacrifice to a Cause, in which they continued engaged by Policy, and the Circumstances of the Times rather than by Inclination; and for that Reason they had taken care not to furnish those Places with sufficient Garrisons to make a proper Defence. However, they made heavy Complaints of the *Sophi's* Attempts upon what they called their Towns, and gave him to understand, that in case he continued, they would be obliged to declare themselves openly. But the *Sophi*, still using the Troops of *Ceylan* with such Regard as Men do not shew to Enemies, did not for all that alter his Conduct; and answered, that he judged he had as much Right to assist *Cha-Baskan*ⁿ, as the *Ceylinese* thought they had to support *Nagar*^o, since both Parties pretended they were authorised to it by Treaties. The Queen of *Golconda*^p, and her Allies were so much inferior to *Cha-Sephi* in Power, that, notwithstanding all their boasting, it was very probable he would, in this Campaign, conquer the greatest Part of what the House of *Delly* was possessed of in *Feldran*^q. *Rutor-Cha*^r was ordered to march with the forty thousand Men under his Command, to one of the strongest Towns, which it was not questioned but he would invest immediately: They were under the same Apprehension at the Court of *Golconda*, for other Places which were not less important. In vain did *Nagar* endeavour to animate

K 2

the

ⁿ The late Elector of Bavaria, and Emperor. ^o The Queen of Hungary. ^p Hungary. ^q Flanders.
^r The Duke of Harcourt.

the *Ceylanese* from a Principle of Glory; they answered, that they had fulfilled their Engagements, even beyond what they were obliged to do; that it was neither prudent, nor their Interest, to run the Danger of having the War carried into their own Dominions by sacrificing themselves for the sake of others; that they had already lost enough during this Campaign, to think of preserving the rest by good Offices and Negotiations; and finally, that what determined them not to fall out with *Persia*, was a Desire of keeping always, by their Mediation, a Door open for a Peace; a Conduct which could not but appear commendable to their Allies. Such were the Reasons by which the *Ceylanese* excused themselves from making greater Efforts, or declaring themselves openly.

The Rapidity of *Cha-Sephi's* Conquests in *Feldran*^a, which the Allies were by no means in a Condition to oppose, was all on a sudden stopped by the News that Prince *Salcher*^t had passed the *Indus*^u, and that at the Head of four-score thousand Men he put *Seif*^w to the greatest Streights, who had been obliged, with the utmost Precipitation, to abandon the Country he was occupying, and to retire farther up, in order to prevent the Enemy from entring into *Persia*^x. This Passage of the *Indus* appeared so much the more surprizing, as, though *Seif* was strong enough to make *Salcher* buy it very dear, yet that Prince had met with no Resistance from those same *Persians*, who the Year before had the Glory to disappoint the Attempts he had made.

^a Flanders.
Boal De Coigni.

^t Charles.
^x France.

^u The Rhine.
^y Prussia.

^w Mar-

made. It was suspected that the *Sopbi*, in order to dertermine the King of *Zagathay* ^y, who was strongly solicited to declare against the Queen of *Golconda*, and who wanted only a Pretence to do it, had given Orders to *Seif* to suffer the *Golcondians* to pass the *Indus* without Opposition. This Passage was indeed a most specious Pretence to justify before all *Asia* ^z *Gion-Kan's* ^a Conduct: The Necessity, to which by that Event *Cha-Sepbi* was going to be reduced, of ceasing to assist *Cha-Baskan* ^b in order to defend his own Dominions; the bad Consequences it would be attended with for the Emperor of *Mogul* ^c, who was to be destitute of all Assistance; the Apprehension People were under, lest the Queen of *Golconda* ^d, by revenging herself of that Prince, should endeavour to enslave even the whole Empire; the Majesty of the Chief of the Empire, and the Dignity of the whole Body exposed; the Honour of the *Rajas* ^e whose Interest it was to support the Prince they had chosen; all these Reasons might seem sufficient to determine the King of *Zagathay* ^f to undertake the Defence of *Cha-Baskan*, and he made use of them, or at least, of some of them, to justify the Treaty he had lately made with that Emperor, with the *Sopbi*, and with some other Princes, and to authorize his Hostilities against *Nagar* ^g.

In the mean time *Cha-Sepbi*, who feared lest the *Golcondians* should make him pay dear for the Complaisance he had to suffer them to pass

K 3 the

^y Prussia.

^z Europe.

^a The King of Prussia.

^b The Emperor.

^c Germany.

^d Hungary.

^e Electors.

^f Prussia.

^g The Queen of Hungary.

the *Indus*^h, without striking a Blow, left *Kalife-Sultan*ⁱ, whom he had lately honoured with the great *Calaat*^k at the Head of the Army in *Feldran*^l, and with thirty-five thousand Men he detached from it, he flew to the Assistance of *Seif*^m. *Rutor-Cha*ⁿ had also Orders to go and join him with the Army he commanded. These several Bodies made forced Marches, and joined at last, notwithstanding all the Precautions *Salcher*^o had taken to prevent their Junction: On both Sides the Forces were formidable, the Ardour equal; in the *Golcondians* a firm Resolution to preserve their Advantages, and even to improve them; in the *Persians* a strong Desire to make the Enemy repass the *Indus*^p, and to signalize themselves in the Presence of their King: These Dispositions left no room to question they should soon come to an Action, and it was daily expected, when the *Sophi*^q fell dangerously ill. In a few Days he was in a dying Condition, it was even reported that he was dead. All other Concern gave way in the Hearts of the *Persians* to that they were in for so dear a Prince: The Love they had for him, the too well-grounded Fear they were in of losing him, especially in the present Situation of Affairs, suspended all the Operations of War, and the Generals took no other Care but to post themselves so securely, that the Enemy could make no Advantage of the Consternation of the *Persians*, nor of the Misfortune that threaten'd them. But at the Time there

^h The Rhine. ⁱ Count De Saxe. ^k The Title of Marshal of France. ^l Flanders. ^m Marshal De Coigni. ⁿ The Duke D'Harcourt. ^o Prince Charles. ^p The Rhine. ^q The French King.

there were no Hopes, but from the Strength of Age and Nature, a favourable Crisis snatched that Prince out of the Arms of Death. The publick Joy was equal to the Concern they were in before; all the Orders of the State shewed their Gladness in Emulation of one another: And for two Months nothing was to be seen in *Persia*, but Rejoicings and Feastings, which occasioned a prodigious Expence, notwithstanding the Care that was taken to keep them within Bounds, lest the Estates of private Persons should be impaired. These were Proofs of Zeal and Love, very honourable to the Nation, and still more glorious for the Prince.

Prince *Salcher's* Passage over the *Indus*^r, and his Irruption into the neighbouring Provinces, were not attended with such fatal Consequences for *Persia*, as were justly apprehended. The March of the King of *Zagathay*^s, at the Head of a hundred-thousand Men, towards the Kingdom of *Jenupar*^t, obliged *Salcher* to repass the River immediately, in order to oppose this new Enemy. But whatever haste he made, he could not arrive soon enough to prevent the taking of the Capital, and the Conquest of Part of the Kingdom. This Conduct of *Gion-Kan*^u was extremely exclaimed against by the Queen of *Golconda's* Allies, and especially by the *Ceylaneze*, who did not spare him in their Discourses. The Animosity of the People of *Ceylan* against that Prince, made them so blind with regard to their own Interest, that they did not perceive how much it was their Advantage that he should thus declare against Na-

K 4

gar

^r The Rhine. ^s Prussia. ^t Bohemia. ^u The King
of Prussia.

gar^u, at a Time when the Claim he laid to several of their Dominions, and which he seemed inclined to assert by main Force, could not fail to occasion an open War between *Zagathay* and *Ceylan*^w; they did not see that the Engagements *Gion-Kan* was just entered into, removed the Storm far from them, and that, as the War he undertook would in all probability cost him a great many Men, and immense Sums, it would be a long time before he could be in a Condition to disturb them.

The Diversion made by the King of *Zagathay*, was a terrible Stroke for the Queen of *Golconda*^x. By this the Dominions of that Princess became again the Theatre of the War: By this *Cha-Bascan*^y and his Allies were at hand, not only to recover *Visapouran*^z, notwithstanding the thirty thousand Men, which *Salcher*^a had the Precaution to put into it as he was marching to the Relief of *Jenupar*^b but even to carry their Arms into the Principality of *Delly*^c. Finally, by this the *Persians*^d, being delivered from the dangerous Neighbourhood of the *Golcondians*, were at liberty to enter in their Turn into the Provinces subject to *Nagar*^e, with Hopes of carrying their Conquests very far. It was very difficult for the Queen of *Golconda* to stand so many Enemies at once: The Confederate Army in *Feldran*^f continued in a State of Inactivity, which belied the Reports that were spread as though it was immediately to attack *Kalife-Sultan*^g; and indeed

^u *The Queen of Hungary.* ^w *Prussia and Holland.*
^x *Hungary.* ^y *The Emperor.* ^z *Bavaria.* ^a *Prince Charles.* ^b *Bohemia.* ^c *Austria.* ^d *French.* ^e *The Queen of Hungary.* ^f *Flanders.* ^g *Count De Saxe.*

indeed it was not probable that the Allies would undertake any thing against an experienced General, who was advantageously posted, and against whom it was very dangerous to fit down with an Army but little superior to his. Happily for the Queen of *Golconda*, *Selim-Kan*, King of *Thibet*, and *Raja* of *Labor*^h being persuaded by the Solicitations, and more still by the Subsidies of the Emperor of *Japan*, declared for her, and sent a Succour of twenty two thousand Men to Prince *Salcher*. This Reinforcement put him in a Condition to retake most of the Towns, which the King of *Zagathay* had seized upon, and to force that Monarch to retire with so much the more Precipitation, as on the one Hand he apprehended to be obliged to come to a Battle, which he would probably have lost, his Army being considerably lessened by Sickness and Desertion; and on the other it concerned him very much to cover the Province of *Bacar*^l, which an Army of *Golcondians*^k lately raised, threatened with an Invasion. *Gion-Kan's*^l Retreat was so sudden, that he had not Time to withdraw the Garrisons he had at *Jenupar*^m and in two or three other Towns: The greatest Part of them were made Prisoners of War: Above eight thousand Men, who were in *Jenupar* went out with an immense Booty; but they were so harrassed by the Enemy, that but few of them joined the grand Army.

K 5

Such

^h King of Poland and Elector of Saxony. ^l Silesia.
^k Hungarians and Austrians. ^l The King of Prussia.
^m Prague.

Such was the End of *Gion-Kan's* Enterprife, which *Nagar's* ⁿ Friends openly stiled a foolish Attempt: It might however have deserved quite another Name, if *Cha-Sephi's* Illness had not prevented the Execution of the Design that was formed to attack *Salcher* ^o, to force him to repass the *Rhine*, and to harraß him in his Retreat, so as to put it out of his Power to make Head against the King of *Zagathay*; or if after the *Sophi's* Recovery it had been possible to make Haste enough by forced Marches to fall upon the *Golcondians* ^p, or to put them between the Fires of the Troops of *Zagathay*, and those of the *Persians*; or finally, if the Season had suffered the latter to enter into the Queen of *Golconda's* Dominions, far enough to oblige *Salcher* to march thither, and to extricate, by that Diversion, the King of *Zagathay*, who in that case had been strong enough at least to keep the Conquests he had made.

The Queen of *Golconda's* Success against *Gion-Kan* was ballanced by the Loss of some Towns, and, amongst other, of a considerable one, which the *Sophi* took after a long and bloody Siege, and by *Cha-Bascan's* recovering Part of *Visapouran* ^q. These several Expeditions closed the Campaign, and each Party went into Winter-Quarters. *Persia*, designing to be at Hand to begin Hostilities very soon the next Year, resolved to make forty-thousand Men, under the Command of *Azer* ^r, who was come into Favour again, take Winter-Quarters, by fair or foul Means, in the Dominions of the
Rajas

ⁿ *The Queen of Hungary.* ^o *Prince Charles.* ^p *Austrians.* ^q *Bavaria.* ^r *Marßhal Maillebois.*

Rajas of Guzarate, Buckor and Multan *. It was even given out, that that Army was designed to attack the Principality of *Cabul*, or to penetrate into the Dominions of the King of *Zagathay*, in order to force him to stand firm, in case he had some Thoughts to forsake the common Cause, as the *Persians* had some Reasons to fear he had.

The *Sophi* was impatiently expected at *Ispahan* †; he went thither at last, was received with great Acclamations, the People rejoicing as much to see again a Prince they adored, as they had been moved with Grief, when they apprehended to lose him. His Illness proved fatal only to *Osiria* ‡, and to her Sister *Doghdon*. They had followed him into *Feldran* §, and from thence to the *Indus* ¶, as had also done several other Ladies of the Court. During his Illness, the two Sisters were ordered to withdraw immediately, and were deprived of the Employments they owed to his Love. But the Return of his Health put an End to their Misfortune. They returned to Court, where their Triumph was so much the more splendid, as their Employments were also restored to them, and *Osiria* received new Proofs of *Cha-Sephi's* Inclination for her. This Favourite soon after her Return to Court was seized with a Distemper, which carried her to her Grave. Some suspected that she was poisoned; others ascribed her Death to a Remedy taken in an improper Time; some also imagined it was occasioned by an excessive Joy. She left great Riches behind.

* *The Electors of Mentz, Treves, and Cologne.*

† *Paris.*

‡ *Madem. Chateauroux.*

¶ *Flanders.*

§ *The Rhine.*

hind her, which she bequeathed to her Sisters. *Cha-Sepbi* was extremely afflicted at the Death of *Ofiria*; but more important Cares diverted his Grief. One of those Cares, which was none of the least, was the Marriage of the Prince of *Persia* ¹ with a Daughter of the Emperor of *China* ²: It was just concluded; and an Ambassador was to be chosen to make a solemn Demand of the Princess. All the Lords of the first Rank were ambitious of that Honour. *Mirza* ³, Governor of the young Prince, pretended that as such he had a Right to be chosen for that Ambassy. His illustrious Birth, his Rank, his Merit, besides the Advantage of having educated the presumptive Heir to the Crown, might have made *Cha-Sepbi* incline in his Favour; but he had been banished a few Days before that Prince's Return. His Disgrace had even been kept so secret, that but a few Hours were granted to him and his Spouse, to prepare themselves to obey. He was a Man pretty much advanced in Years, of a cold Access, unshaken in his Resolutions, but little ambitious, and who asked for no Favours: He was of a Temper but little indulgent, and not flexible: But otherwise very worthy by his noble Sentiments, and by his uncommon Honesty, of the Preference *Cha-Sepbi* had given him for the Education of his Successor. Some Discourses he had imprudently dropped, and which were still more imprudently reported, were the Cause of his Banishment.

In the mean Time, various Reports were daily made concerning the Choice of an Ambassador to *China*. But at last the *Sophi* fixed

¹ The Dauphin. ² The King of Spain. ³ M. De Chatillon.

ed the publick Uncertainties, by appointing *Moulah-Baubec-Kan* ^b, who was then his Ambassador at the Court of *Peking* ^c. The Nomination of that *Moulah* was owing perhaps to *Cha-Sepi*'s Inclinations for Savingness, as much as to the strong Solicitations of his Friends, who were sure not to lose so proper an Opportunity to render his Fortune more splendid.

At the Time of *Mirza*'s Banishment, *Azouf*, who was Governor to Prince *Jesseing*'s ^d Son, met with the same Fate. This gave so much the more Surprise, as he was a near Relation of *Taxis* ^e, and *Neamed* ^f, Ministers who were deeply in Favour, and had introduced him at Court, and supported him till then. He was so little beloved, that he met with no Person who was concerned for his Misfortune.

Several Courtiers, amongst whom there were some whom the *Sophi* had used with Distinction, were also disgraced, for taking the Liberty of blaming the Design *Cha-Sepi* had taken to restore young *Sevagi* ^g, and consequently his Cousins, the two Princes, Sons to *Soliman* ^h, to all the Honours, Ranks, Rights, and Prerogatives, which *Cha-Abas the Great* had solemnly granted to their Fathers, and of which, after that Monarch's

^b *The Bishop of Reimes.* ^c *Madrid.* ^d *The Duke of Chartres, Son to the Duke of Orleans, and Grandson to the late Regent.* ^e *M. D'Argenson, Secretary of State for foreign Affairs.* ^f *M. D'Argenson, Minister of War.* ^g *The Duke of Ponthievre, Son to the late Count of Toulouse.* ^h *The late Duke of Maine. He and his Brother the Count of Toulouse were Bastards of Lewis XIV, who had legitimated them, granted to them all the Honours of the Princes of the Blood, and even made them and their Heirs capable to succeed to the Crown, in Case the Male-Lines of the royal Family should all become extinct.*

narch's Death, they were deprived in an authentick Manner, at least with regard to their Posterity. This Injustice was done to those Princes, chiefly at the Request of *Mirza-Haddi*ⁱ, and by the Instigation of his Mother *Roxana*, a haughty Woman, who was not sensible that she disgraced herself by thus persecuting her own Blood. What seemed most odious in this Princess's Conduct was, that she forced her Son, if I may say so, to strike the first Blows, at the very Time he was engaged in a Party of Pleasure at the Castle of *Sevagi* the Father.

The Motive, which moved the *Sophi* to revive the Decrees of *Cha-Abas the Great*, was the Marriage of the young Prince *Sevagi* with *Anais*^k, Niece to Prince *Jesseing*, which it was desired should be preceded by that Act of royal Authority. It was natural enough for *Gha-Sephi* to give signal Proofs of Friendship to a Princess of his own Blood, and to do in Behalf of the Children that might be born of her all that could be expected from the sovereign Power. This most of the *Grandeess*, who were jealous of transmitting to their Posterity their Rights and Ranks without any Alteration or Mixture of Blood, pretended to oppose. This Affair put the whole Court in a very great Agitation; the most prudent of the Courtiers acted underhand; the imprudent exclaimed loudly, and were punished by Banishment. But notwithstanding these Proofs of the *Sophi*'s Severity, and how favourably soever he might be disposed towards *Sevagi*, his Design could not but meet with very great Difficulties, and all that his supreme Will could effect was to prevent Protests, and other Deeds of the same kind.

Anais,

ⁱ The Duke of Bourbon. ^k Princess of Modena.

Anais, a young and beautiful Princess, and by her Mother's Side descended from the Royal Blood, could not but flatter the Inclination and Ambition of *Sevagi*. She had been on the Point of marrying *Mirgi-Mola*¹. Her Mother *Scherazada*^m, had conducted herself so artfully, that she had found Means to carry her Point to the Prejudice of *Zephis*ⁿ *Fulnia's* Mother. They were just about taking the last Measures, when *Zephis* set new Engines to work, which disappointed *Scherazada's* Expectations. The Court was then at a Country Seat a Day's Journey distant from *Ispahan*^o: *Scherazada* enjoyed there all the Satisfaction a Mother can have from the Certainty of having procured a considerable Match for her Daughter: She had no manner of Mistrust; and it was with the utmost Surprise she was told one Evening, that she was no longer to depend upon *Mirgi-Mola* for a Son-in-Law: She questioned it at first, and being desirous to be satisfied, she set out immediately for *Ispahan*, and went to the Palace of *Jesseing*, where that sad News was confirmed to her. Her Grief was excessive, but did not make her forget, that since the Ceremony was not yet performed, there were still some Hopes left. She left no Stone unturned in order to secure the Success of an Affair, in all Respects so advantageous; but she had the Vexation to see that all her Endeavours proved ineffectual: The Marriage of her Daughter with Prince *Sevagi* comforted her, if some Difference in Rank and Riches can comfort an ambitious Heart.

At

¹ *The Duke of Chartres.*
Modena.

^m *The Dutchess of*
ⁿ *The Princess Dowager of Conti.*

^o Paris.

At that Time *Zensea*^p, a *Persian* Officer, who a few Months before had been degraded with the most odious Marks of Infamy, for making a shameful Capitulation in a Fortress that was committed to his Care, and which it was thought he might have defended, cleared himself, and was restored to his former Rank. A noble Instance of *Cha-Sepi*'s Justice, and still more of his Kindness and Moderation. Under a less indulgent Administration, they would have acted quite otherwise: That Officer would have been immediately punished with Death, and would have been so much the more to be pitied under his Misfortune, as too great a Precipitation would have put it out of his Power to retrieve his Honour and Reputation.

The Preparations that were making for the Prince of *Persia*'s Marriage, did not prevent the *Sophi* from giving a most particular Attention to take proper Measures for carrying on the War with Vigour. New Levies were making; great Numbers of Troops were ordered to march into *Feldran*^q, where it was reported the Campaign would be opened very early in the Season by the Siege of some important Town; there was a great Rumour of an approaching and numerous Promotion of General-Officers: In a Word proper dispositions were making to carry on a glorious offensive War the next Spring, notwithstanding the Projects of Accommodation that were on the Anvil, and the sincere Inclination the *Sophi* professed he had to promote the Peace of *Asia*^r. The Queen of *Golconda*^s, the Emperor of

^p Genfac,
[•] Hungary.

^q Flanders.

^r Europe.

of *Japan* and their Allies omitted nothing on their Side to make their Arms victorious : They reckon'd to receive a considerable Assistance from *Russia* in the Spring; they hoped that during the Winter they should engage several other Princes to enter into their Alliance, and even to conquer the Aversion which the *Jalekeldarians*^t seemed to have against entering into the War, or declaring against *Cha-Baskan*^u, with whom their King, as Prince of the Empire of *Mogul*^w had since a few Months entered into an Alliance by the Treaty of *Amadabat*^x, together with the King of *Zagathay*^y, the *Raja* of *Brampour*^z, and some other Princes.

Such was the Situation of the general Affairs, when *Remana*, only Sister to the Queen of *Golconda*, and who had been about a Year married with Prince *Salcher*^a, happened to die in the Capital City of that Part of *Feldran*^b which belongs to the House of *Delly*^c, and of which she was Governess. The Death of this Princess was very much lamented : She was but Twenty-six Years old ; her Good-nature, her Humanity, her endearing Character, her Beauty, which many Persons thought was superior to her Sister's, had rendered her the Darling of the People, and made them the more afflicted for her Death. A difficult Labour, by which she was delivered only of a dead Child, threw her into a lingering Distemper, which continued above two Months, and which the whole Skill of

^t The Swedes. ^u The late Emperor of the House
of Bavaria. ^w Of Germany. The King of Prus-
sia is Prince of Heile. ^x Francfort. ^y Prussia.
^z The Elector Palatine. ^a Charles. ^b Flanders.
^c Austria.

of the most eminent Physicians could not cure. By her Death the Queen of *Golconda* gained an Advantage, which was, that it made void that Clause of her Marriage-Contract with *Narsic*^d, by which it was agreed, that in case she had no Male-Children, and *Remana* had any, the latter alone would have a Right to succeed to the Hereditary Dominions of the House of *Delly*, from which *Nagar's*^c Daughters would be excluded. Though the Queen of *Golconda* had a Son, and might hope to have more, yet there would still have been room to be uneasy with regard to future Times, if *Romana* had left some Male-Heirs; whereas her Death happening without any Posterity, removed all Causes of Uneasiness: A Motive proper enough to ease one's Grief.

An Event, which happened soon after *Remana's* Death, gave a full Scope to the Speculations of Politicians. After the *Persian* Troops were gone into Quarters, *Scadeck*^f, instead of returning to *Ispahan*^g, set out from the Army with his Brother and a numerous Retinue. He went first to *Cha-Baskan*^g, and from thence he took his Journey by the Frontiers of *Cabul*, in order as it was said, to go and concert with the King of *Zagathay*^h, the Operations of the ensuing Campaign. Perhaps also it was with a Design to make sure of that turbulent and discontented Prince, who complained loudly of the *Persians* for not attacking the *Golcondians*ⁱ, when they repassed the *Indus*^k, or at least for not following

^d *The Grand Duke of Tuscany.*
Hungary.

^f *Marshal Bellisle.*

^g *Paris.*

^h *Prussia.*

^k *The Rhine.*

^c *The Queen of*
^g *The Empe-*
ⁱ *Austrians.*

lowing them when they marched to *Jenupar*^m, a double Fault, said he, which had hurted the common Cause exceedingly, because it obliged him to abandon his Conquests, and to retire with Precipitation before an Enemy, whom they might have defeated, if they had fought him, or whom they would have put between two Fires, if they had followed him. The War, which was carrying on, being in some manner *Scadeck's* own Work, it was his Province to make *Persia* extricate herself out of it with Honour. He was very much known and esteemed by the King of *Zagathay*; it was therefore very probable that he had no other View in this Journey but to confer with that Prince. *Scadeck*, whose Journey was no Secret, arrived on the Borders of *Cabul*, and as a *Persian* General he was arrested with his whole Retinue for want of Passports, and also under a Pretence of the War, which *Cha-Sepi* had declared against *Ghanavas-Kan*, Emperor of *Japan*, and — of *Cabul*. Some imagined that this Affair would be attended with great Consequences, whilst others looked upon it as a designed Piece of Policy. It seemed indeed inconsistent with good Sense, for *Scadeck*, whose Design was to go *Attock*ⁿ, to take his Way by *Cabul*, rather than the common Road, and that in such a Case he should have neglected to provide himself with Passports, unless he had a premeditated Design to be arrested; that thus by his Confinement the *Sophi*, who did perhaps mistrust the King of *Zagathay*, or was tired with him, might have a specious Pretence to break with him, or to justify himself in

^m Bohemia. ⁿ Berlin.

in case the following Operations did not succeed to that Prince's Wishes, suppose he should constantly adhere to the Alliance. But that Monarch's sudden Departure from his Capital City to his Army, which he had left but a few Days before, precisely at the Time when *Scadeck*^a was on his Journey, and it was reported that he was going to him, gave room to suspect, that *Gion-Kan* would avoid all Conferences, and consequently that he would recede from the Treaty of *Amadabat*^o. Some *Persons* imagined that *Scadeck* took his Journey by the Frontiers of *Cabul* on purpose to examine with his own Eyes, whether it would not be possible to make the *Persian* Army penetrate into that Principality; that Army, I mean, which was encamped towards *Guzarate* and *Multan*^p, by leading it over Mountains of a difficult Access indeed, but yet not quite impassable. This Suspicion was so much the better grounded, as those Mountains, which were looked upon as a sufficient Defence, were neither guarded nor fortified, and *Scadeck* affected to pass over them with his whole Retinue, among whom there were several Officers very understanding, and capable to draw a Plan of the Country. People went further still; they imagined that *Scadeck* was arrested in the Dominions of *Cabul* with no other View but to give him an easy and most natural Opportunity to enter into some Negotiations with the Emperor of *Japan*, in order to promote a general Peace, or to make some private Treaty; in consequence of which Surmizes, it was not questioned but

^a *M. Bellisle.* ^o *Francfort.* ^p *Mentz and Cologne.*

but Orders should be sent immediately to remove him to *Japan*.

At that same time a Report was spread, that *Cha-Sepbi* was going immediately to grant to the *Gaures*^a a free and publick Exercise of their Religion within his Dominions. This Project, which several Persons look upon as a great Piece of Policy, met with many Opposers: Some called it into Question; others judged the Execution of it impossible, because it was clashing with the Interest of the Gentlemen of the Law^r, who are always ready to make a Shew of an excessive Zeal, and, having it in their Power to turn as they please the Minds of the People, always superstitious, and consequently always ignorant, are ready to overturn the whole State, rather than to suffer certain Innovations.

If I may be allowed to declare what I think concerning the Designs that are ascribed to Sovereign Princes; that Project should not have appeared imaginary, nor the Execution of it impossible.

How large soever and populous a Country *Persia* may be, the great Losses she had sustained during three Years and an half of War, had carried off a prodigious Number of Men. New Levies could not be made without the greatest Difficulties, since, for want of Batchelors, they had been obliged, even for some Years past to press married Men; most of the Soldiers, which the several Provinces had furnished, were under the common Size, too young, and so weak, that a great Number of them died, before they could reach the Bodies, or the Garrisons for
which

^a *The Protestants in France.* ^r *The Clergy.*

which they were designed. The old Regiments were dwindled away, and had kept nothing but their Name; there were hardly in each of them a hundred Men who had seen the War, and were capable to train the new Comers to handle their Arms, to the warlike Discipline, and military Labour; and to inspire them with what is called *the Spirit of the Corps*. In all likelihood the War was to be long and bloody: There was no depending on the new Levies, till they had passed three Years in Garrisons; and yet the several Regiments were to be compleated, and others to be put in the room of those which were drawn every Year out of the Garrisons: The Peasants, a kind of Men who people the Armies, failed: The Impossibility they were under to pay Taxes, and a Misery, that cannot be well described, had, since several Years, forced a vast Number of them, to quit their Villages, and renounce the Tilling of the Lands, and even to fly their Country; which could not but occasion a considerable Diminution in the *Sophi's* Revenue; a most important Article with regard to War! It was of the utmost Consequence to afford a quick Remedy to all those Evils; and the most proper Method for it was certainly to endeavour to get new Inhabitants, who might prove a Resource to the State, both by their Number, and by contributing to the publick Charges. The Choice of a new Swarm of People was not indifferent; it was but natural to pitch upon those, who by their Birth, or Extraction, were in a manner, connected with the State, and still preserved in their Heart that Love for one's native Country, which seems to be born with all Men, or that

secre
have
in ge
ther
ed th
more
seque
rish (

(a)
gener
Franc
the Pe
he is
the Pr
Nante
rest fo
than o
They
are the
Subje
of the
Emple
themse
them
this, t
Gover
nounc
again
Libert
could
their E
their l
tic Pri
the P
that t
would
might

secret Inclination, which Children commonly have for their Father's Country. The *Gaures* in general had all these Qualifications; and further their Stay in foreign Countries had rendered them more industrious, more fit for Trade, more rich, and even more tractable, and consequently very proper to make a Country flourish (a). Independently of the respectable Motives

• *The French Protestants.*

(a) Here our Author seems to suppose, that in case a general Toleration were granted to the Protestants in *France*, this would draw thither again these, whom the Persecution had driven out of that Country. But he is greatly mistaken: For, in the first Place, most of the Protestants who were living when the Edict of *Nantes* was repealed in 1685, are now dead, and the rest so old, that they must think of their Grave, rather than of returning into their native Country. Secondly, They who were born in Protestant and free Countries, are there naturalized, and justly reckon themselves the Subjects of these States: They are settled there; some of them have bought Estates; others have publick Employments Civil or Military; the rest have applied themselves to Trade, or other Professions, which afford them a plentiful and secure Livelihood. Add to all this, the Sweets of Liberty, and of living under a free Government. Is it to be supposed that they would renounce all those Advantages, to go and put themselves again under an arbitrary Government, where, whatever Liberty might for the present be granted to them, they could never be sure to enjoy it long; and where, even their Property, or what they might get by the Sweat of their Brows, would always be at the Mercy of a despotic Prince? They who are in the least conversant with the Protestants, here in *England*, cannot but know that they look upon themselves as *Englishmen*, and would not give up that Advantage for any thing they might be offered in their Ancestor's Country.

which they were designed. The old Regiments were dwindled away, and had kept nothing but their Name; there were hardly in each of them a hundred Men who had seen the War, and were capable to train the new Comers to handle their Arms, to the warlike Discipline, and military Labour; and to inspire them with what is called *the Spirit of the Corps*. In all likelihood the War was to be long and bloody: There was no depending on the new Levies, till they had passed three Years in Garrisons; and yet the several Regiments were to be compleated, and others to be put in the room of those which were drawn every Year out of the Garrisons: The Peasants, a kind of Men who people the Armies, failed: The Impossibility they were under to pay Taxes, and a Misery, that cannot be well described, had, since several Years, forced a vast Number of them, to quit their Villages, and renounce the Tilling of the Lands, and even to fly their Country; which could not but occasion a considerable Diminution in the *Sophi's* Revenue; a most important Article with regard to War! It was of the utmost Consequence to afford a quick Remedy to all those Evils; and the most proper Method for it was certainly to endeavour to get new Inhabitants, who might prove a Resource to the State, both by their Number, and by contributing to the publick Charges. The Choice of a new Swarm of People was not indifferent; it was but natural to pitch upon those, who by their Birth, or Extraction, were in a manner, connected with the State, and still preserved in their Heart that Love for one's native Country, which seems to be born with all Men, or that

secre
have
in ge
ther
ed th
more
seque
rith

(a)
gener
Franc
the P
he is
the P
Nante
rest fo
than c
They
are th
Subje
of the
Emple
themse
them
this, t
Gover
nounc
again
Libert
could
their
their
tic Pri
the P
that
would
might

secret Inclination, which Children commonly have for their Father's Country. The *Gaures* * in general had all these Qualifications; and further their Stay in foreign Countries had rendered them more industrious, more fit for Trade, more rich, and even more tractable, and consequently very proper to make a Country flourish (a). Independently of the respectable Motives

* *The French Protestants.*

(a) Here our Author seems to suppose, that in case a general Toleration were granted to the Protestants in *France*, this would draw thither again these, whom the Persecution had driven out of that Country. But he is greatly mistaken: For, in the first Place, most of the Protestants who were living when the Edict of *Nantes* was repealed in 1685, are now dead, and the rest so old, that they must think of their Grave, rather than of returning into their native Country. Secondly, They who were born in Protestant and free Countries, are there naturalized, and justly reckon themselves the Subjects of these States: They are settled there; some of them have bought Estates; others have publick Employments Civil or Military; the rest have applied themselves to Trade, or other Professions, which afford them a plentiful and secure Livelihood. Add to all this, the Sweets of Liberty, and of living under a free Government. Is it to be supposed that they would renounce all those Advantages, to go and put themselves again under an arbitrary Government, where, whatever Liberty might for the present be granted to them, they could never be sure to enjoy it long; and where, even their Property, or what they might get by the Sweat of their Brows, would always be at the Mercy of a despotic Prince? They who are in the least conversant with the Protestants, here in *England*, cannot but know that they look upon themselves as *Englishmen*, and would not give up that Advantage for any thing they might be offered in their Ancestor's Country.

tives of Religion, the Persecution that was carried on against them, did *Persia* an unexpressible Prejudice: The Country was dispeopled by it; the Arts suffered, the Prince's Treasures were diminished, and foreign Countries enriched. How great are these Objects! How moving to a Sovereign! It were not surprising if *Cha-Sepi* had been affected by them, and had resolved to act accordingly. Any sensible Prince, acquainted with the Truth, zealous for the Good of his Subject, and an able Politician, would do the same.

There were other Motives, which might determine the *Sophi* to publish such an Edict in Favour of the *Gaures*. There was a prodigious Number of them in foreign Countries, and especially in those with which he was at War. The Trust they reposed in the *Sophi*, the Love of their Country, the Mildness of its Climate, and more frequent and easy Means of making their Fortune, might determine great Numbers of them to return into *Persia*. What a considerable Loss would not this be, for the *Sophi's* Enemies, or for those who might become so afterwards.

The Project of causing a Revolution in *Japan*, was not entirely given up; it might be revived in some favourable Conjunctions: It was therefore agreeable to sound Policy to endeavour to win the *Gaures*, who are very numerous in that Empire, and to dispose them beforehand, not to prevent at least the Success of that Undertaking.

It appeared more than probable, that the *Ceylανεse* ^u would at last declare themselves openly

^u *The Dutch.*

ly
we
Re
Pe
Av
gre
ons
vou
stor
will
of
Wh
betw
T
Fam
they
and
mies
was
shou
amor
Men
thus
migh
It wa
fortu
for th
try;
was
their
the
of it.
Succ
ed the
Footi

^w H

ly for the Queen of *Golconda* *; the *Gaures* * were the strongest Part of their Subjects: The Resentment for the Ills they had suffered in *Persia*, gave them for *Persian* Government an Aversion which the Natives had not; it was of great Consequence to erase those bad Impressions; and to inspire the *Gaures* with more favourable Sentiments, which might, if not restore them to their Country, at least make them wish for, and perhaps promote the conquering of the Dominions of *Ceylan*, either in the Whole or in Part, in Case a War was declared between the *Sophi* and the *Ceylanese*.

There were still in *Persia* a great Number of Families of the Religion of the *Gaures*, which they professed secretly, but took that Obscurity and Constraint very much to Heart. The Enemies of *Persia* were not ignorant of this. It was very much to be apprehended, lest they should find Means to persuade these *Gaures*, amongst whom there were some very powerful Men, to set up the Banner of Rebellion, and thus a civil War begotten by the foreign War, might bring the State to the Brink of Ruin. It was but Prudence to prevent so great a Misfortune, and to render those Families zealous for the Glory and Preservation of their Country; for which Purpose the most proper Means was to win them by what Men look upon as their greatest Concern, I mean their Belief, and the Liberty of making a publick Profession of it. This kind of Policy could not fail of Success, because the *Gaures* would have esteemed themselves very happy to be upon the same Footing with the other Subjects of the *Sephi*, to

L

whom

* Hungary.

* The French Protestants.

whom in that Case they would not have been inferior with regard to Zeal and Loyalty.

As for the Opposition of the Lawyers ^γ, if it be examined without Prepossession, it will not be found unconquerable. The Right of interpreting the Law is devolved to the Chiefs ^z; to them it belongs to open or shut the Mouth of those who are trusted ^a with the Instruction of the People; it is they who guide and direct their Inferiors as they please. It is well known that few of these Chiefs are free from Ambition, self Interest, and a Desire to be in Favour at Court, to make a Figure there, and to have it in their Power to provide for their Relations. What great Resources will not Policy find in those different Passions, to make those Chiefs, and consequently all their Dependants, act and speak as the Court directs.

There are in *Persia* another kind of Men more dangerous still, because they are not connected with the other Subjects, and have personally nothing to lose ^b. But some serious Reflections upon their Usefulness to the State; upon their Rules of Life, and the considerable Alterations that have been successively made in them; upon the Interest that governs them; upon their Genius, and the Artifices they make use of to compass their Ends; upon the Apprehension they are under of a strict enquiry into their primitive and actual Possessions; upon the Advantages which might arise, from their being prohibited to have any Correspondence abroad, especially with Women and Children;

from

^γ The Clergy. ^z The Bishops. ^a The inferior Clergy.
^b These are the Monks.

from
 der
 yers
 feve
 mor
 not.
 thod
 and
 U
 from
 the
 lar C
 flour
 and
 stow
 large
 partial
 a go
 prefer
 they
 nerall
 uncer
 the p
 are pl
 first C
 ligious
 do no
 cure c
 thing
 be apt
 Mind
 a false

^c The
 tend to
 under
^d The

from their being made to be immediately under the Dependancy of the Chiefs of the Lawyers^c, and from their being forbidden under severe Penalties, strictly executed, to receive amongst them Persons of a certain age: Would not all this, I say, not to mention other Methods, be very proper to keep them in Awe, and prevent them from doing any Mischief.

Upon the whole, what could be apprehended from the Insinuations or Instigations either of the Lawyers, or of the *Faquires*^d, if a particular Care was taken to make the Arts and Trade flourish; to encourage Agriculture by Rewards and even by honourable Distinctions; to bestow Money liberally upon such Persons as have large Families; to administer Justice without partiality; to put the whole People into such a good Condition, as not to be sensible of their present Misery? Men, how ignorant soever they may be supposed, will always chuse, generally speaking, a settled Condition, before an uncertain Futurity, capable to make them lose the present Tranquillity which they enjoy and are pleased with. The temporal Interest is the first Object they are moved with; that of Religion is but a subordinate one: And if they do not perceive, that Religion will either secure or better their Fortune; they will do nothing for it. A Sentiment, which one would be apt to think Providence imprinted in their Mind to prevent the Effects of Superstition, and a false Zeal.

L 2

These

^c That is to say the Bishops, whereas the Monks pretend to depend immediately from the Pope, and not to be under the Jurisdiction of the Bishops.

^d The Clergy or the Monks.

These Reflections will, doubtless, be found too long, and so much the more preposterous, as they only relate to a Project, which had perhaps no other Foundation, but a vulgar Report. But if it be considered of what Consequence that Project is in itself, we shall perhaps have the Reader's Thanks for endeavouring to find out what Motives might have induced the Court of *Persia*^c, to think of it, and for explaining some of the Means which we judged proper to render practicable, to the Execution of it.

^c France.



F I N I S.

M.
A
th
wi
Abdu
Hi
Actio
Akab
log
qu
Ali-M
Ra
Ali-E
by
tha
dia
don
sion
off
Fav
to
Ma
Sep
Rea
Cal
not

THE INDEX.



M. de Morville. A.

ABDOL, the Son of Fazel, first Secretary of State under *Ali Homajou*; his Elogy: His Father's Disgrace turns his Brains; he resigns, and dies with Grief, Page 9, &c.

Abdula-Kan, Raja of Multan, is the third in Rank. His Origine and Character, 102

Action, (a brave) of a young *Persian Officer*, 63

Akabar, Minister of War under *Ali-Homajou*; his Elogy. Is arrested, and why? Is tried; the Consequences of his Trial, 6, 7

M. de Blane

Ali-Kauli-Kan succeeds to *Ast-Kan* in the Dignity of *Raja of Brampour*. His Age and Conduct, 164

Ali-Homajou (Prince) is left out of the Administration by the last Will of *Cha-Abas*, and why? 2. Causes that Will to be made void, and is appointed Guardian to the young *Sopbi*, and Regent of the Kingdom, 4. Finds the Kingdom in the utmost Confusion; the Causes of it; labours to retrieve it; throws off part of the Business upon the Eunuch *Rustan*, his Favourite, 4, 5. Causes *Akabar*, Minister of War, to be arrested; has him prosecuted, and why? Makes *Ibrahim Diwan-Begbi*, and Keeper of the *Sopbi's* Seals. Banishes him afterwards, and for what Reason? Causes *Daracha* to perform his Functions. Calls him back, restores him to his Place, but does not return the *Sopbi's* Seals to him, and why? 7, &c.

D. J. Orleans

The INDEX.

How he employs the Day, and the Night, 10.
 Discovers a Conspiracy, and disappoints it, 11.
 Thinks of declaring War against the Emperor of
China, and for what Reason? Enters into an Al-
 liance with the Emperors of *Mogul* and *Japan*, and
 with the Sovereigns of *Ceylan*. Sends an Army into
China. A Peace made, and on what Terms? The
 short Duration of that War, 12. The Treaty of
 Peace executed in Part, and why only in Part, 13.
 The Arrival of a *Japanese* at *Ispahan*. *Ali-Homa-*
jou runs headlong into a Scheme proposed by that
 Man. The Consequence of it. What that Scheme
 was, 13, 14. Makes a Visit to Prince *Giafer*, and
 from what Motive, 15, &c. His Death, 19.

Amadabat, an Imperial City in the Empire of *Mogul*,
 where the Assemblies for the Election of an Empe-
 ror must be kept, 100. *Scadeck* goes thither with
 the Character of Ambassador from *Cha-Sepbi*, 121

Anais (Princess) Neice to Prince *Jesseing*. Her Cha-
 racter. Her Descent. Was designed for Prince
Mirgi-Mola. How that Affair came to miscarry.
 Marries young Prince *Sewagi*, 207, &c.

Aracam (the Principality of) secured to *Narfic*, Prince
 of *Tatta*, when and why, 75. Its Situation, 117,

Asia, its Condition, and several Sovereigns at the
 Death of *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, 101, 117.

Ast-Kan, Raja of *Brampour* is the eighth Raja. His
 Interest, 104. His Death, 164.

Attock (the Raja of) holds the seventh Rank, 104.
 See *Gion-Kan*.

Awa (the Territory of) given up to the King of *Nec-*
bal, when, and why? 75. Its Situation, 117.

Azamut, one of the four *Mehters* contributes to raise
Osiria to the Rank of the *Sophi's* Favourite. His
 Character, Intrigues, Talents and Ambition, 161,
 &c.

Azer, a *Persian* General, commands the Army of
Multan. His Character. What Opinion Men have
 of his Capacity, 126. Is ordered to march to the
 Assistance

The INDEX.

Assistance of Nefir. His Conduct on that Occasion, is recalled and disgraced, 138, 139. Comes into Favour again, and commands an Army, 202.
Azouf, Governor of *Mirgi-Mola*, Son to Prince *Jesseing*, is banished and not pitied, 205.

B.

Bacar (the Province of) See *Gion-Kan*.
Baker, General of the Queen of *Golconda*, forces *Kazac* to capitulate, and subdues the whole Principality of *Delly*, 130, &c.
Balek (the Kingdom of) See *Mohadi*.
Baubec-Kan (the *Moullab*) the *Sophi's* Embassador at the Court of *Peking*. His Character. How he is received in *China*, 151, &c. Is chosen to ask *Gelaleddin's* Daughter for the *Sophi's* Son; why he is chosen, 205.
Bedreddin, a *Chinese* General, joins the *Cochinchinese*, and enters into the Dominions of the House of *Delly*, situated beyond the *Ganges*. Is recalled, 152, &c.
Boulaki, a *Persian* General, passes the *Indus*. His Expeditions. Is killed in the Trenches. His Elogy, 65, 66.
Brampour (the *Raja* of) the eighth in Rank. See *Ast-Kan*, and *Ali-Kouli-Kan*.
Buckor (the *Raja* of) holds the second Rank. See *Noli-Kan*.

C.

Cabul (the — of) — See *Chanarvas-Kan*.
Ceylan (the Sovereigns of) enter into a Treaty of Alliance with *Persia* against *China*, 12. Their Government. Their Conduct after the Death of *Charussinc-Frola*, and their Circumspection, upon what they are grounded; the Advantages and Inconveniences which proceed from thence. The Discontent of Part of their Subjects. They take no Notice

The INDEX.

tice of it, and why, 111, &c. They complain against the *Sophi's* Attempts in *Feldran*. Their Policy with regard to their Garrisons. Their Answers to the repeated Solicitations of the Queen of *Golconda*, 194, &c. The Hatred of the *Ceylanese* against *Gion-Kan*, and the People's Discourses against that Prince, 195, &c.

Ceylanese. See *Ceylan*.

L. XIV

Cha-Abas, I. of that Name, King of *Persia*, deserves the Surname of *Great*. His Death. His last Will. It is cancel'd, by whom, and at whose Request, 1, &c. Exhausted all his Treasures, and upon what Account, 4. His Inclination for the Fair Sex, and especially for an *Indian* Woman, by whom he has a Son, named *Giafer*. His blind Love for that Prince. He causes him to be confined, and for what Reason, 14, &c. Gives to *Ismael-Beg* a Place of *Moullah*, makes him afterwards *Scheick-el-Selim* in a Province, and finally appoints him Tutor to *Cha-Sepbi*, 29.

Cha-Asteri, King of *Cerea*, his Claim to the Succession of *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, and upon what Foundation. Does not prosecute it, and why? The Disposition of his Mind, 108, 109.

Cha-Baskan, *Raja* of *Visapour*, refuses after the Death of *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, to acknowledge *Nagar* as Heiress to the House of *Delly*, and why? 94, &c. Enters into an Alliance with *Persia*, the King of *Zagathay* and the *Raja* of *Labor* against that Princess, 97. Is the fifth in Rank amongst the *Rajas*. His Person, Character and Qualities. Opposes the House of *Delly*, and why, 103. Puts himself at the Head of the *Persian* Army as Generalissimo. Feigns to march directly to the Capital of the Principality of *Delly*, and invades the Kingdom of *Jenupar*. What his Design was. The Inconveniencies of that Conduct. He seizes upon the Kingdom of *Jenupar*, and how. Is elected and crowned King of it, 127, 130. Loses his Conquests in

The INDEX.

in the Principality of *Delly*, and even his own Dominions; the wrong Disposition he makes of his Troops; is elected Emperor of *Mogul*; leaves the Command of his Army to *Nesfir*, and goes to *Amadabat* to be crown'd, 134. The Propositions of Peace he makes to the Queen of *Golconda* rejected, and for what Reason, 175.

Chanawas-Kan, Emperor of *Japan*, and ——— of *Cabul*, concludes a Treaty of Alliance with *Persia* against the Emperor of *China*, 12. Enters into a War against that Emperor, and for what Reason, 87, &c. Is the ——— amongst the ———. By whom that Dignity was established; why, and upon what Terms: His Devotion for the House of *Delly*; his Alliance, advantageous to the Queen of *Golconda*; and why; his Authority in his Empire; to what he owes it; his Person, Conduct, Character and Inclinations, 105, &c. Goes to the Army assembled near *Amadabat*; a Battle between that Army and the *Persians*, 178, &c.

Cha-Ressinc-Frola, Emperor of *Mogul*, enters into an Alliance with *Persia* against the Emperor of *China*, 12. Being assisted by *Russia*, he endeavours to get *Mahmoud's* Son elected King of *Tibet*, 59, &c. Is attacked by the *Sophi*, the Emperor of *China* and the King of *Necbal*; the Success of that War, 59, 65, &c. Resolves to conclude a Peace, and for what Reasons, 74. His Negotiations with the Court of *Persia* kept secret, and why. The Treaty signed at *Gebanabad*; the chief Articles of that Treaty, 74, &c. Reflexions upon it, 75, 76. Marries his eldest Daughter, *Nagar*, with *Narsic*, Prince of *Aracam*, and upon what Conditions, 76. His Death; his Family becomes extinct with him: His Character, Government, Severity against his Generals; what was the Cause of his Death; left but two Daughters; had taken no Measures to have his Successor appointed; was of the House of *Delly*, 88, &c. A Digression concerning the three last

The INDEX.

Emperors of that House, 90, &c. His Decree for settling the Order of Succession to his Dominions, accepted by the Body of the Empire, and guaranteed by most of the Powers of *Asia*, 91. The Contents of that Decree : The immense Possessions of this Prince ; his Daughter, *Nagar*, succeeds him, 93. Pretenders to his Succession, 94, &c. Wars after his Death, 97, 193, &c.

L. XV. *Cha-Sepbi* I. of that Name, King of *Persia*, being still but a Child, succeeds his Grandfather *Cha-Abas* I. His Education, 1. Is put under the Guardianship of *Ali-Homajou*, 4. Is designed to marry a Princess of *China*, 12. Is declared to be of Age, 19. His Person, Character and Inclinations, 24, &c. His Journeys to Prince *Sewagi*'s Seat ; his Diversions and Behaviour at that Seat ; goes no longer thither after *Sewagi*'s Death, and why, 49, 50. His private Conversations with *Sewagi*, *Fatmé*, and *Zelida* there ; and several Intrigues, 51, 52. He seems to shew some Inclination for the Fair-Sex ; and is persuaded to make *Retima* his Favourite ; that Passion is suspected to cover a secret Commerce with *Zachi*, *Retima*'s Sister ; his Grief at *Zachi*'s Death ; and the Care he takes of her Son, are the Foundation of that Suspicion, 54. Resumes the Pleasures that Death had interrupted ; his Suppers in the little Recesses of his Palace ; a short Description of those Recesses, and of what was transacted there, 55, 56. Furnishes but small Supplies to *Chekour*, his Father-in-law, 62. Declares War against *Cha-Reffinc-Frola* ; what was the Pretence, and what was the true Reason of it ; sends two Armies, the one to the *Indus*, and the other to the *Ganges*, having first made an Alliance with the Emperor of *China*, and the King of *Nec-bal* ; the Success of these two Armies, 65, &c. Sends on the same Day the *Grand Calaat* to *Sujah*, *Ibbi*, *Nessir*, and *Seif*, his Generals, 71. Secret Negotiations with the Emperor of *Mogol*, why set on Foot ; are followed by a Treaty signed at *Gebanabad* ;

The INDEX.

nabad ; the Articles of that Treaty ; the Principality of *Tatty* yielded by it for ever to *Persia*, 73, &c. He causes *Cofrou* to be arrested, 77. Would persuade *Sewagi* to take the Helm of the State in his Hands, 79, &c. Sends daily to know how that Prince does, who was dangerously ill, 82. Continues his Journeys two Years after that Prince's Death ; discontinues them, and buys a Country-seat, to the Embellishment of which he applies all his Cares ; a short Description of that Seat ; who is appointed Keeper of it ; what Company resorted thither, 83, &c. Marries his Daughter to a Son of the Emperor of *China* ; the Character of that Princess, 86. Enters into an Alliance with *Cha-Baskan*, the King of *Zagathay*, and the *Raja* of *Labor*, against the Queen of *Golconda*, 97. Raises powerful Armies, and erects large Magazines ; thinks of sending an Ambassador to *Amadabat* for the Election of a Successor to *Cba-Ressinc-Frola* ; chuses *Scadeck* for that Embassy ; sends by him to *Cha-Baskan* the Commission of *Generalissimo* of the *Persian* Armies, 117, &c. Assembles an Army towards *Guzarate*, designed to serve under the Command of *Cha-Baskan*, and another in *Segestan* to cover the Country of *Multan* ; the March of these two Armies, their Expeditions and Success, 126—139. Withdraws his Troops out of the Empire of *Mogul* ; his Losses in two Campaigns ; turns *Nessir* out of Favour, 146, &c. Considerable Preparations by Sea, 148. Receives a *Turkish* Ambassador, to whom he makes rich Presents, 150, &c. Sends *Boubec-Kan* into *China*, with the Title of Ambassador, and upon what Account, 151. The young Prince of *Persia*'s Character, *ibid*. An Army in *Feldran* ; he resolves to make it act ; *Ibbi* commands it, and does nothing ; for what Reason ; *Cha-Sepbi*'s Moderation on that Occasion, 159. Turns *Retima* away ; raises *Ofiria* to the Rank of Favourite ; his Conduct towards both, 161. Visits *Ismael-Beg* when sick ; his Grief for

The INDEX.

for the Death of that *Athemadoulet*; what he does for his Memory, 165, &c. Declares that he will govern by himself; and acts accordingly; what the Publick thinks of it; his Indignation against *Cofrou*, upon what Account; this Prince's singular Conduct with *Rhedi*, 170, &c. Marches two Armies against the Queen of *Golconda*, and her Allies; their Expeditions, 178, &c. Makes great Preparations both by Sea and by Land; causes his Ships to sail out, with those of *China*; a Fight between them and the *Japonefe*; the *Persian* Admiral's Conduct; he is disgraced, 187, &c. A Project of a Descent into *Japan*; Measures taken accordingly; it miscarries; for what Reason, 189, &c. Turns *Tamet* out; puts *Ibbi* for some time in his Place; offers it afterwards to *Couton-Cha*, and upon his Refusal gives it to *Taxis*, 182, &c. Declares War at last against the Queen of *Golconda*, the Emperor of *Japan*, and the King of *Nechal*; great Armies in Motion; makes his first Campaign at the Head of his Army in *Feldran*; his Success; his Answers to the Complaints of the *Ceylanese*; is stopped in his Conquests by the News of Prince *Salcher*'s passing the *Indus*; the Suspicions concerning that Passage; leaves *Kalife-Sultan* in *Feldran*, and flies to the Assistance of *Seif*; commands *Rutor-Cha* to march thither also; falls sick at the Time an Action was expected; is thought to be dead, recovers; the public Rejoicings on that Account, 193, &c. Takes a strong Town belonging to the Queen of *Golconda*; resolves to make an Army winter in the Dominions of *Guzurate*, *Buckor* and *Multan*; with what Views, 202. His Return to *Ispahan*; calls to Court *Ostria* and *Doghdon*, who were turned away during his Illness; loses that Favourite soon after; his Grief; diverted by more important Cares, 203, &c. Appoints *Boubec-Kan* to ask the Princess of *China* in Marriage for the Prince of *Persia*, 205. Banishes several Courtiers, and for what Reasons, *ibid.* Preparations

para
restor
to hi
Chekour
20.
was
thori
Mah
to re
conc
gain
and
Com
take
ther
with
the
turn
and
cour
the
74.
China
Cochin
Comer
ness
135
Corea
Cofrou
Secr
tion
Dis
Pla
stor
gra
Ref
get
Ism
ten

The INDEX.

parations for the next Campaign, 208. A Design of restoring the *Gaures* within his Dominions ascribed to him; Reflexions upon it, 213 to the End.

Chekour, King of *Thibet*, takes Sanctuary in *Persia*, 20. His Daughter marries *Cha-Sepbi*, 24. He was chosen King of *Thibet* the first Time by the Authority of the King of *Jalekeldar*, who unthroned *Mahmoud*; was unthroned in his Turn, and obliged to retire into *Persia* till *Mahmoud's* Death; when he concurr'd with the Design *Persia* had to raise him again to the Throne of *Thibet*, is elected accordingly, and by his Imprudence loses a Crown which his Competitor, *Mahmoud's* Son, snatches from him; takes Sanctuary in a Frontier Town; is besieged there; departs from it in the Night-time attended with one single Person only; retires to *Sarmacande*, the Capital City of *Zagathay*; from whence he returns into *Persia*; his Age at that Time; his Person and Character; and that of his Spouse; a short Account of this Prince's Life, 58, &c. Abdicates at the Conclusion of the Peace, and upon what Terms, 74, 75.

China (the Empire of) See *Gelaleddin*.

Cochinchina (the Kingdom of) See *Olabi* and *Bedreddin*.

Comet, its Apparition; how long it is seen; its Bigness; the fatal Prognosticks inferred from it, 134, 135.

Corea (the Kingdom of) See *Cha-Akeri*.

Casrou is made Keeper of the *Sapbi's* Seals, and First Secretary of State by *Ismael-Beg*, 36. His Extraction, Employments, Person and Talents, 37. His Disgrace contrived long before-hand, and at what Place, 51. Second's *Ismael-Beg's* Project of restoring *Chekour* to the Throne of *Thibet*, 62. Is disgraced, confined to a Citadel, and for what Reason; Reflections on that Minister's Fate, 79. Hopes to get again into the Administration after the Death of *Ismael-Beg*; his Proceedings to succeed in that Attempt; and completes his Ruin by it, 171.

Con.

Spain

Cherubin

The INDEX.

Gouton-Cha, formerly Ambassador from *Persia* at the *Ottoman Court*, is chosen First Secretary of State, and refuses to accept that Post, 193.

D.

Dabur of Hassceleffe, King of *Jalekeldar*, 111. See *Jalekeldar*.

Daracha is appointed by *Ali-Homajou* to perform *Ibrahim's* Functions; his Descent, Character and Person; had been a long time *Great-Cadi*; keeps the *Sopbi's* Seals after *Ibrahim* was restored; his Death, 8, 9. One of his Grand-sons is appointed *Great-Cadi* in the Room of *Feyde*, 193.

D Arguison

Delly (the Principality of) See *Cha-Baskan*, *Nagar*, *Salcher*, *Baker* and *Kazac*.

Diwan-Begbi, the chief Justice in *Persia*. See *Ibrahim*.

Dogbdon, one of *Retima's* Sisters; her Person and Age; marries *Mir-Tebeke*, 164. Attends the *Sopbi* in *Feldran*, and on the *Indus*; is turned out of Favour, and restored, 203.

E.

Emni (the River of) an Action on its Banks between the *Persians*, the Queen of *Golconda*, and her Allies; and what was the Success of it, 178, &c.

Emperor of *Mogul*, what Qualifications are requisite for his being elected; what is practised before and after his Election; how far his Power and Right extend, 98, &c.

Eveneg, General of the Emperor *Cha-Reffinc-Frola*; his Elogy; entered into the Service of *Mogul*, and why; he stops the Progress of the *Persians* on the *Indus*, 67, &c.

Euxica, one of *Ofiria* and *Retima's* Sisters, and the Wife of *Zingis*; her Person and Conduct, 164.

F.

Fatim
Pe
Fatm
M
Pe
sec
of
ha
Ac
Pa
an
Fax
Se
on
fro
9,
Feldr
to
16
Feyde
wh
Figh
fia
Fulm
M
Gang
ph
Gaur
rel
Ex
Geba
an
fin

The INDEX.

F.

Fatima goes with *Roxana* to wait upon *Sahib*; her Person and Character, 21.

Fatmé (Princess) Daughter to *Roxana*, and Sister to *Mirza-Haddi*, makes a great Figure at the Court of *Persia*; her Person and Character; is thought to be secretly married, 45, 46. Is of *Cha-Sephi's* Parties of Pleasure at *Sevagi's* Seat; diverts the *Sopbi* there; has sometimes private Conferences with him; what Advantage she makes of them; is seldom of the Parties at the little Recesses in the Palace of *Ispahan*, and for what Reasons, 50, &c.

Fazel succeeds to *Daracha*, as Keeper of the *Sopbi's* Seals; his Extraction, Employments and Capacity; on what Account he is esteemed; *Ismael-Beg* takes from him the *Sopbi's* Seals; he dies with Grief, 9, &c.

Feldran, a Frontier Province of *Persia*, belongs partly to the *Sopbi*, and partly to the Queen of *Golconda*, 16, &c. See *Cha-Sephi* and *Nagar*.

Feyde, is removed from the Place of *Grand-Cadi*, which is given to a Grandson of *Daracha*, 193.

Fight (a Sea-) between the *Chinese* joined with the *Persians*, and the *Japonesse*; the Success of it, 187, &c.

Fulnia (Princess) *Morat-Bakche's* Sister, marries Prince *Mirgi-Mola*; her Age, Person and Character, 187.

G.

Ganges (the River). See *Cha-Resinc-Frola*, *Cha-Sephi*, *Genchid*, *Nessir*, *Scif*, &c.

Gaures (the) a Report spread that the *Sopbi* designs to restore them in his Dominions; that Project and its Execution examined, 213, &c.

Gehanabad, the capital City of the Principality of *Delly*, and the Seat of the Empire of *Mogul* under *Cha-Resinc-Frola*. See the Article of that Prince, and *Nagar*.

Gelä-

Marmonville

The INDEX.

Gelaleddin, Emperor of *China*, is suddenly attacked by *Ali-Homajou*; makes a Peace on Condition of a treble Marriage, 12. Enters into an Alliance with *Persia* and the King of *Necbal*, against the Emperor of *Mogul*, and with what View, 59. Succeeds in his Designs by the Treaty of *Gebanabad*, 74, &c. Enters into a War with the Emperor of *Japan*, on what Account, 87. His Claims to *Cha-Reffinc-Frola's* Dominions, 95. His Age, Government and Character, with that of his Consort the Empress: The Views and Interest of this Prince, 107, &c. Sends *Bedreddin* with an Army into the Dominions of the House of *Delly* situated on the *Ganges*: Recalls that General, and sends *Segedin* in his stead; makes a Diversion in the Principality of *Jesova*, the Direction of which he gives to his Son *Negeddin*; the Design of that Diversion; he recalls *Yerid*, who commands under *Negeddin*, and sends *Soulaki* in his Place, 152, &c. The Losses of the *Chinese* in the War against the *Japonefe*; the Courage of the *Chinese*; they retire into their own Harbours, 187, &c.

Gemchid, a *Persian* General, his Age; his Reputation in War, upon what it is grounded; his Rodomontadoes at his Departure for the Army on the *Ganges*; joins the King of *Necbal*; behaves well, falls sick and dies; is but little regretted by the King of *Necbal*, and why, 69, &c.

Giafer (Prince) Son of *Cha-Abas I.* by an *Indian* Woman; his Education and Character; his Contempt for *Sephi-Mirza* Presumptive Heir to the Crown: He strikes him, is punished, and how, 14, &c.

K9-fps *Gion-Kan*, succeeds his Father in the Kingdom of *Zagathay*, and the Dominions of *Attock*; at what Age; the Joy of the *Usbecks* upon this Prince's Accession to the Crown: His Genius; his Character before and after he came to the Throne, 85, &c. His Claim to *Cha Reffinc-Frola's* Succession; he arms to assert it, and invades the Province of *Bacar*, 96. Enters into an Alliance with *Persia*, the *Rajas* of *Visapour* and

and
fion
96,
jab
que
stan
they
the
con
lays
Glo
tenc
decl
Mar
the
The
Que
his
The
Prin
with
vent
Golcom
Golcom
of V
Guzar
Raj
Kan

Haider
rien
the l
Hasdi
odion
Hassien
genc
lents

The INDEX.

and *Labor* against the Queen of *Golconda*; his Invasion is the Signal of a War almost general in *Asia*, 96, 97. Is the seventh in Rank amongst the *Rajabs*, 104. How he receives *Scadeck*; the Consequence of this Interview, 124, 125. A misunderstanding between his Troops and those of *Labor*; they part; a Battle fought against Prince *Salcher* in the Plain of *Kuffala*; *Gion-Kan* gains the Victory; concludes a Treaty with the Queen of *Golconda*, and lays down his Arms; a Blemish he casts upon his Glory by that Conduct, 132, &c. Takes a Pre-
tence from Prince *Salcher*'s passing the *Indus*, to declare again against the Queen of *Golconda*, 199. Marches into the Kingdom of *Jenupar*, seizes upon the capital City, and Part of the Kingdom, *Ibid.* The Danger to which that Invasion exposes the Queen of *Golconda*, 200. He is forced to give up his Conquests, and to retire with Precipitation, 201. The Opinion of *Nagar*'s Friends concerning that Prince's Attempt: It might have been attended with great Consequences, had they not been prevented by the *Sopbi*'s Sickness, 202, &c.

Golconda (the Kingdom of). See *Nagar*.

Goleondians, their Cruelties, especially on the taking of *Visapour*, 131.

Guzarate (the *Raja* of) the ninth in Rank amongst the *Rajabs*. See *Nabal-Akel-Kan*, and *Mir-Kassim-Kan*.

H.

Haider, a *Japonesse* General, active, brave and experienced; his Conduct at the Action on the Banks of the River *Emni*, 179.

Hasdi (the *Iman*) a Man trusted by *Ismael-Beg*: His odious Conduct towards *Ibben*, 265, 266.

Hassien, already in the Administration under the Re-*M. de St*
gency of *Ali-Homajou*; his Office, Character, Talents and Inclinations; he keeps his Place under *Ismael-Florentin*
mael-

The INDEX.

mael-Beg, and why, 40. Is continued in it; and by what Means, 45.

Horeb, a *Turkish* Ambassador at the Court of *Persia*; his Arrival; his Entry at *Ispahan*; his Person; his amorous Intrigues, and those of his Attendants; his Covetousness, and Departure, 150.

Hussein, a *Persian* Officer, commands a *Chinese* Man of War; his Intrepidity; is summoned by the *Japonefe* to surrender; how he behaves himself, 177.

J and I.

Jaber, the *Dellian* General at the Action on the Banks of the River *Fmmi*, 179.

Jalekeldar (the King of) unthrones *Mahmoud* King of *Thibet*, and causes *Chekour* to be elected; is defeated at *Lotupwa*, 58. *Dabur* of *Hasselleffe*, his Successor, endeavours after the Death of *Cha-Ressinc-Frola* to prevent the War ready to break out, 111. The *Jalekeldarians*, at the Instigation of *Ismael-Beg*, declare War against *Russia*; it is disadvantageous to them; a Peace concluded; on what Terms; two *Jalekeldarian* Generals punished with Death, 176. The *Jalekeldarian's* Aversion against entering into the Queen of *Golconda's* Quarrel; the King of *Jalekeldar*, as Prince of the Empire of *Mogul*, enters into an Alliance with *Cha-Baskan*, and with the King of *Zagathay*, the *Raja* of *Brampour*, and other Princes, 209.

G. Britain *Japan* (the Empire of). See *Chanawas-Kan*, and *Japonefe*.

Japonefe (the) make War against the Emperor of *China*, and for what Reason, 87. Furnish the Queen of *Golconda* with considerable Sums; and at last declare for her; Reflexions upon their Conduct in that Respect; their Character; why, though but little pleased with their Emperor *Chanawas-Kan*, they are very obedient to him, 105, 106. Their Behaviour towards *Persia*, 148. Their Losses in the War

The INDEX.

War against the *Chinese*; their Resources; their prodigious warlike Preparations; their Power and Courage, 165. Their Attempt upon a *Chinese* Man of War in a neutral Port, 177. Fortune favoured them very much when the *Persians* intended to make a Descent in *Japan*, 192.

Ibben is made Minister of War by *Ali-Homajou*, in the room of *Akabar*; his Talents, 6. Is removed, and *Osman* is put in his stead, 39. Is restored to his Post after the Death of the latter, 84. His Death, 167. M. De Brethel

Ibbi, Brother to *Zelida*, and one of *Boulaki's* Lieutenant-Generals, commands jointly with *Sujab*; his Talents and Character; does not agree with *Sujab*, and passes to the Army on the *Ganges*, 66, 67. Receives the *Great Calaat*, 71. Commands the Army in *Feldran*; what he does during that Campaign. Marches in order to disappoint the Designs of the Allies; advances on the River *Emni*; engages in a Battle which turns to the Prejudice of the *Persians*; raises his Camp; locks himself up within formidable Lines; marches out of them, and draws nearer to *Seif*, 181, &c. Performs for a Time the Functions of *Tamet*; but does not continue long in that Post; and for what Reasons; commands in *Feldran*, 192, &c.

Ibrahim administers Justice under *Ali-Homajou*; had been *Deroga*; by his Merit he is raised to the Post of *Divan-Beghi*, and of Keeper of the *Sopbi's* Seals; his Elogy; he opposes *Ali-Homajou*, and is banished; does not well bear his Misfortune; is recalled, and restored into the Place of *Divan-Beghi* only; his Person; his Conduct after he is recalled, 7. Why the *Sopbi's* Seals are not returned to him, 9. Is supported by the Princes *Jesseing*, *Soliman* and *Sevagi*, 44. Receives again the *Sopbi's* Seals, 78. M. D' Agnesseau

Jenupar (the Kingdom of) with the Dignity of *Raja*, is the fourth in Rank; that Dignity becomes vacant by *Cha-Ressinc-Frola's* Death, 102. For the rest, see

The INDEX.

see *Cha-Baskan*, *Cha-Sepbi*, *Gion-Kan*, *Nagar*, *Salcher*, &c.

Jenupar (the City of) the Capital of the Kingdom of that Name, besieged and taken by *Cha-Baskan*, 128. Besieged by Prince *Salcher*, afterwards by *Zieki*, to whom it surrenders, 136—142. Is taken by *Gion-Kan*, 199. And re-taken by Prince *Salcher*, 201.

Jesowa (the Principality of) see *Korsula* and *Koturi*.

Jesseing (Prince) *Ali-Homajou's* Son, his Rank, Character and Virtues, 26. Supports *Rica* and *Ibrahim*, 44.

Illement (the River) see *Scadick*.

Indian Woman (an) Favourite to *Cha-Abas I.* 14.

Indus (the River) see *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, *Cha-Sepbi*, *Eveney*, *Salcher*, &c.

C. Fleury. *Ismael-Beg* (the *Moutlab*) Tutor to *Cha-Sepbi*, causes *Mirza-Haddi* to be banished, 20. Succeeds him, 24. His Age, Extraction, Profession, Arrival at Court, the Dignities and Employments he obtains; gains an entire Ascendant over the *Sopbi*; his Foible for Astrologers; his Character, and his good and bad Qualities, 29, &c. Coming into the Administration he finds *Persia* in a deplorable Condition; retrieves it in a little Time; ruins several Families; makes a Sacrifice of *Mahamet*, and for what Reason; is not the less hated for it; gives *Mahamet's* Place to *Rbedi*; is not much esteemed by the Powers of *Asia*; foresees a War, and prepares for it; but to no Purpose, it being prevented by Negotiations; Embassadors sent to *Sehiras* a City of *Persia*; what they do there, 29, &c. Gives to *Castron* the Employments of *Fazel* and *Abdoul*, 36. Supports *Rbedi* and *Osmán*, 45. A Plot to remove him, 51. Thinks of retiring, and advises the *Sopbi* to put Prince *Svragi* at the Head of the Administration. *Ibid.* does not dislike *Retima's* Elevation to the Rank of a Favourite, and for what Reason, 52, 53. A Project to put *Chekour* again on the Throne of *Thibet*; is the Pretence

The INDEX.

tence of a War against *Cba-Reffine Frola* : *Ismael-Beg*'s secret Designs ; Alliances made accordingly, 60, &c. His Behaviour towards the *Thibetians* ; Preparations for *Chekour*'s Journey to *Thibet* ; the small Supplies he is furnished with ; the ill Success of his Expedition, 62, &c. Forsakes *Cosrou*, 77. Reflections concerning the necessary Qualifications of a Minister, 79. *Sewagi*'s Death determines *Ismael-Beg* to continue in his Post ; he gives young *Sewagi* substantial Proofs of his Friendship, 83. Accepts in Part the Project communicated to him by *Scadeck*, and why only in Part ; the Declaration he makes to *Scadeck*, concerning the Execution of that Project, 120, &c. Is the Author of *Kazac*'s Capitulation at *Secandra*, 130. His great Savingness is the Occasion of *Gion-Kan*'s Defection, 133. Why he appoints *Boubec-Kan* Ambassador to the Court of *China*, 152. His Health begins to grow bad, 165. His Death, 168. An Examination of that Minister's Character and Conduct, 169, &c.

Ispahan, the Capital City of the Kingdom of *Persia*.
See *Ali-Homajou*, *Cba-Sepbi*, *Giafer*, *Sewagi*, &c.

K.

Kalife-Sultan forms a Project to take *Jenupar* by *Scalado*, and executes it ; his Courage, Experience, Character, extraordinary Strength, Talents for Love, and pretended Passion for *Zilamira*, 128, &c. Joins *Azer*, and engages his Life, that he would lead the *Persian* Army to *Jenupar*, 139. Is honoured with the great *Calaut*, and commands the Army in *Feldran* after *Cba-Sepbi*'s Departure for the *Indus*, 198.

Kalmouks, their Situation, Courage, and good Qualities ; their Government ; the good Understanding they keep up with the Powers of *Asia* ; the Advantages they reap from it ; continue Neuter after *Cba-Reffine-Frola*'s Death, 116, &c.

Kaluced,

The INDEX.

Kaluced, one of the *Golcondian* Generals under Prince *Salcher*, attempts to pass the *Indus*, signalizes himself, but is repulsed, 183.

Kasamir, a General-Officer amongst the *Persians*, brave and experienced, repulses *Kaluced*, who attempted to pass the *Indus*, passes it himself some Weeks after; and repairs some Works; what Judgment is passed upon his Expedition, 183, 184.

Kazac, a *Persian* Officer left by *Cha-Baskan* to secure the Conquests made in the Principality of *Delly*, 128. His Retreat under the Walls of *Sicandra*; consents to a disgraceful Capitulation: justifies himself; his Person and Character, 130, 131.

Kigon, *Seif's* Son, is appointed Governor of one of *Cha-Sepbi's* Country Seats, 84.

Kihelt, is joined with *Selim* for the Management of Foreign Affairs, under *Ibbi*; his Experience and Negotiations, 192.

Korfula (Prince) succeeds his Father in the Kingdom of *Necbal*, and Principality of *Jesova*; his Age; dis-appoints his Father's Design to ascend the Throne again; imprisons him closely; inherits his Father's Genius, Ambition, and refined Policy, 41, &c. Enters into an Alliance with the Emperor of *China*, and the *Sopbi* against *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, 59. Joins the *Persians* on the *Ganges*, and commands in chief; is but little sorry for *Gemchid's* Death, and why, 69, &c. His Courage and Capacity, 72. Obtains by the Peace the Territory of *Awa* and its Dependencies, 75. His Claim to *Cha-Ressinc-Frola's* Succession, 95. His Conduct after that Emperor's Death; declares for the Queen of *Golconda*, and for what Reasons, that Stroke might have been prevented, 109, &c. Joins the *Dellians*, and marches against the *Chinese* and *Cochinckinese*, 152, &c. Flies to the Assistance of his own Dominions, which were invaded by *Negeddin*; abandons on a sudden the Principality of *Jesova*, and retires; the Suspicions occasioned

The INDEX.

occasioned by his Retreat; his Courage and Capacity during the Course of that War, 153, &c.

Koturi, Prince of *Jesova*, and King of *Necbal*, abdicates in Behalf of his Son *Korsula*; what was the most probable Reason of his Abdication; his blind Love for a Favourite Woman; repents of his Abdication; attempts to ascend the Throne again, and is disappointed; his Death and Character, 41, &c.

Kussala (the Battle of) between Prince *Salcher*, and *Gion-Kan*; with Victory to the latter, 132.

L.

Labor (the *Raja* of) the sixth in Rank: See *Selim-Kan*.

M.

Mahamet, charged with the Administration of the Finances under the *Athemadoulet Ismael-Beg*; is disgraced, and why; his Character and Talents; is lamented, and does not long survive his Misfortune, 32, 33.

Mahamet-Nessir, Brother to *Nessir*; his Profession and Character; is disgusted with the World, and retires into a Desert; appears at Court again; upon what Occasion; returns to his Retirement, 147, &c.

Mahmoud, King of *Thibet* and *Raja* of *Labor*; his unexpected Death puts all *Asia* in Motion, and especially *Persia*; had been long since elected King of *Thibet*; his too arbitrary Proceedings with the *Thibetians*; attacks the King of *Jalekeldar*; is Unthroned; Unthrones in his Turn *Cbekour*, who had been elected in his stead, 58, &c.

Mahmoud, Emperor of the *Turks*, does not meddle with the Affairs of *Mogul*, after *Cha-Ressinc-Frola's* Death, and for what Reason, 111.

Mamet,

The INDEX.

Mamet, a *Dellian* General, commands in the Action on the Banks of the River *Emni*, 179.

Miram (Prince) Brother to *Mirza-Haddi*; his Character and Inclinations, 27. Distinguishes himself in the Battle on the Banks of the *Emni*, 180.

Mirgi-Mola, (Prince) Son to Prince *Jesseing*, distinguishes himself in the Action on the Banks of the *Emni*, 180. Marries *Fulnia*, Prince *Morat-Backche*'s Sister; his Person and Character; Reflexions upon his Education, 187.

D. of Cumberland *Mir-Kassein*, Son to *Chanawas-Kan*, Emperor of *Japan*, goes to the Army assembled near *Amadabat*; is present at the Battle on the Banks of the *Emni*, and is wounded; a noble Action of this Prince towards a *Persian* Officer, 178, &c.

Mir-Kassem-Kan is elected to succeed *Nabal-Abel-Kan*, in the Dignity of *Raja* of *Guzzrate*; his Conduct after his Election, 173.

Mirza, Governor of the young Prince of *Persia*; his Pretensions on that Account; his Birth, Character, and Banishment; why he is banished, 204.

Mirza-Haddi (Prince) is made *Athemadoulet* after *Ali-Homajou*'s Death; his Inclinations; the Credit of the Women under his Administration; is banished after he had been two Years and an half in the Ministry, 20, &c. Sends back the Princess of *China*, and loses the Opportunity of making his Sister *Saleb Sultana* Queen; an Account of that Affair, and its ill Success, 20, 23. Marries the *Sophi* with *Chekeur*'s Daughter, 20, 24. His Person, Character, and Inclinations, 26. Supports *Cosrou*'s Party, 44. His Death, 84.

Mir-Tebeke, a *Persian* Lord, marries *Doghdon*, Sister to *Retima* and *Ofiria*; the Character and Rank of this Lord, 164.

Mogolians (the) recover their Right after the Death of *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, 107.

Mogul (the Empire of) continues for above three Centuries in the House of *Delly*, 90. A Description of that

Germany

The INDEX.

that Empire ; its Government, Constitutions, and Condition at the Death of *Cha-Reffinc Frola*, 98, &c. *Cha-Baskan* is elected Emperor, 134. The States and Princes of that Empire being divided between *Cha-Baskan* and the Queen of *Golconda* forge their own Chains, 175, 176.

Mobadi, King of *Balek*, in Alliance with *Persia* ; receives in his capital City the Troops sent by *Cha-Sepbi* to *Chekour*, 62. Wants to prevent the War after *Cha-Reffinc-Frola's* Death, 111.

Morat-Bakche (Prince) the Son of a Daughter of *Mirza-Haddi* ; his Person, Courage, and Character, 26. Is chosen by the *Sopbi* to command the Troops sent to the Assistance of *Negeddin* ; the Reason of that Choice ; joins *Negeddin* ; a Council of War, and the Consequences of it ; a Siege raised, and Winter-Quarters taken, 155.

Multan (the *Raja* of) is the third in Rank. See *Abdula-Kan*.

Muzaim (the *Moullab*) *Cha-Sepbi* is prepossessed against him by *Ismael-Beg*, and for what Reason, 168. Is admitted into the *Sopbi's* Councils ; his Genius, Character, Talents, Age and Person ; a Project ascribed to him, 189, &c.

N.

Nabal-Abel-Kan, *Raja* of *Guzarate* ; his Family ; raised to that Dignity by his Merit ; is the first of the *Rajas* ; his Character, 101. His Death, 173.

Nadir, one of *Zelida's* Sons by her first Husband, is recalled from his Banishment ; what was the Cause of his Disgrace, 51.

Nagar (Princess) eldest Daughter to *Cha-Reffinc-Frola*, Emperor of *Mogul*, marries *Narsic*, Prince of *Ara-cam* ; upon what Conditions, 76. After her Father's Death she is proclaimed Queen of *Golconda* and *Jenupar*, and Heiress to all the Dominions of the House of *Delly* ; is owned as such by all the

M

Rajas,

The INDEX.

Rajas, except the *Raja* of *Visapour*, and by the greatest Part of *Asia*, 93, 94. Her Answers to *Cha-Baskan's* Claim, 94. Is attacked by *Gion-Kan*, 96. Her dangerous Situation, and upon what Account, 125. Is attacked by *Cha-Baskan* in Conjunction with the *Persians*. Retires from *Gchanabad* to *Golconda*, 126, 127. Subdues the Principality of *Delly*. Seizes upon all *Visapouran*, and sends Prince *Salcher*, her Brother-in-Law, against the *Rajas* of *Attock* and *Labor*, 130 — 132. Her Army is routed at *Kussala* by *Gian-Kan*. She brings him off from the Alliance of *Cha-Baskan*, and makes a Treaty with him, to which the *Raja* of *Labor* accedes, 133. Sends her Troops to the Capital of the Kingdom of *Jenupar*, orders it to be besieged, and becomes Mistress of it, 136, &c. Gives an Entertainment on the Occasion of the Surrender of *Jenupar*, and establishes a severe Tribunal there, 143. Her Character, 144. Sends in Conjunction with her Allies a powerful Army into *Feldran*, and with what View, 158, &c. Rejects the Offers of Peace made her by *Cha-Baskan*, and why. Her Conduct on that Occasion enquired into. An Examination of a Proposition asserted by her Friends, 175. Assembles a considerable Army on the Banks of the *Indus*; and in Conjunction with her Allies sends another into the Neighbourhood of *Amadabat*; and for what Purpose, 178. A Battle between the latter of these Armies and the *Persians* on the Banks of the River *Emni*, 179. Is attacked in *Feldran* by the *Sophy*. Endeavours, but unsuccessfully, to animate the *Ceylanese* from a Principle of Glory, 194, 196. Prince *Salcher's* crossing the *Indus* without striking a Blow, is not attended with great Consequences, and why, 199. She is attacked again by *Gion-Kan*, *ibid.* Being succoured by the *Raja* of *Labor*, she drives *Gion-Kan* back, 201. Loses some Towns elsewhere, and Part of *Visapouran*, 202. Makes, during the Winter, together with her Allies, great Preparations for a glorious

The INDEX.

- glorious Campaign. Her Hopes and Designs, 209.
 What Motives she had to be easily comforted for the
 Death of her Sister *Remana*, 210.
- Nali-Kan*, *Raja* of *Buckor*, the second in Rank. His
 Family and Character, 102.
- Nargum*, the first of his Family who made any Figure,
 is intirely trusted by *Zelida*, and governs her. His
 Hatred against *Fatmé*, on what it is grounded. Com-
 municates it to *Zelida*. His Genius, and Talents.
 Defects in his Conduct. Causes *Zelida*'s Friends to
 grow cool. Makes her take wrong Steps, 46, 47.
 To the Cause why the *Sophi* leaves off going to *Se-
 vagi*'s Seat, and how, 50.
- Narfic* (Prince) has the Principality of *Aracam* secured
 to him by the Peace, and why, 75. Marries *Na-
 gar*, *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*'s eldest Daughter; upon what
 Conditions, 76. His Person and Character, 145.
- Neamed*, Son of *Daracha*, succeeds to *Ibben* in the
 Post of Minister of War. His Person, Ambition,
 and wise Conduct, 167
- Necbal* (the Kingdom of) See *Korsula* and *Kturi*.
- Negeddin*, second Son to *Gelaleddin* by his second
 Queen, marries *Cha-Sepbi*'s eldest Daughter. His
 Age and Character, 86. Is commanded by his Fa-
 ther to make a Diversion in the Dominions of the
 King of *Necbal*. Its Success. Runs in Danger of his
 Life, and how. Is joined by Prince *Morat-Bakche*;
 the Consequences of that Junction, 153, &c.
- Neges-Couli Beg*, a *Falekeldarian* General, condemn'd
 to lose his Head, and why. Makes his Escape. Is
 retaken and beheaded. Is universally lamented, 176,
 177.
- Nessir*, a General Officer of *Persia*, takes upon him, af-
 ter *Gemchid*'s Death, the Command of the Army
 jointly with *Seif*. The Character of these two Ge-
 nerals, 70. Is surprized in his own Quarters in the
 Night-time. His Obstinacy in the Cause of it. The
 Consequences of that Event. Receives the great
Calaat, 70, 71. Commands under *Cha-Baskan* in

The INDEX.

Scadeck's stead. His Remonstrances to that Prince concerning his Conduct, 127, &c. Foresees *Gion-Kan's* Defection, gives Notice of it to the Court of *Persia*, and meets with no Credit, 133. Upon the News of the March of the *Golcondians*, he moves his Quarters, retires to *Jenupar*, and intrenches his Army there, 135. Is besieged there. He and his Army reduced to great Extremities. Leaves *Jenupar* to go and meet *Azer*, who was bringing him a Supply. The Junction is not made, and for what Reason. He takes the Command of the Army in the room of *Azer*. Cannot preserve *Visapuran*, and is obliged to quit it, 136, &c. Leads back the scattered Remains of his Troops into *Persia*. Goes to Court, and is out of Favour. Reflection on the Fate of this General, 146, &c.

O.

Olabi, eldest Son to *Gelaleddin* by his second Wife, is, at the Peace, acknowledged King *Cochinchina*, 75. Governs wisely. Is in his Heart an Enemy to the House of *Delly*. Scruples to declare himself against the Queen of *Golconda*, and for what Reason, 108. Joins at last his Troops with the *Chinese*, retires them afterwards, and is Neuter, and why, 153. Notwithstanding his Neutrality he sends Troops to *Segeddin*, General of the *Chinese*. His Occupations during his Neutrality. He breaks it, and marches in Person to the Assistance of the *Chinese*. The Reasons of his Conduct. That Junction is not attended with great Consequences, 173, &c.

Onumar, *Cha-Sepbi's* Minister at the King of *Balek's* Court. His Character. His unfortunate Expedition in *Chekour's* Favour, in which he is killed, 62, &c.

Orcan (Prince) Brother to *Mirza-Haddi*. The Disorders of his Youth. His Person; he is reclaimed, 26, 27.

Orixa

The INDEX.

Orixa (the Battle of) famous and very bloody, between the *Mogolians* on one Side, and the *Persians* and the King of *Necbal* on the other. The *Mogolians* leave the Field of Battle, 72. An Accident that happened to a *Persian* Officer in that Action, 73.

Ormus (the Citadel of) See *Giafer*.

Ofiria, one of *Retima's* Sisters, is introduced at Court. Her Person and Ambition. Supplants *Retima*. Sells her Conquest dear to *Cha-Sepbi*. Her Credit, 161, &c. Follows the *Sophi* into *Feldran*, and thence upon the *Indus*. Is out of Favour, and called back again. Dies soon after it, 203.

Ofman is made Minister of War by *Ismael-Beg*, in the room of *Ibban*. His Talents but indifferent. His Character. His Inclination for Pleasure, 39. Is supported by *Ismael-Beg*, 45. His Death, 84.

P.

Persia (the Kingdom of) Reflections on its Government, 40. Intrigues and Parties amongst the Ministers, 44. *Fatmé* and *Zelida* make a splendid Figure at Court, 45. Rejoicings at *Ispahan* on Account of the Marriage of *Cha-Sepbi's* eldest Daughter, with the Emperor of *China's* Son, 84.

Phadeck, Emperor of *Russia*, his Capacity and extensive Views. To what degree of Power and Splendor he raised *Russia*, 158.

R.

Rajas (the) subordinate to the Emperor, but Sovereigns in the Empire. To them belongs the Right of electing the Emperor. Their Titles, Rank, and Number. The Difference in their Dignities. Their Privileges. The Privileges of the *Raja* of *Guzarate*, 98, &c. They prepare to repair to *Amadabat*, in order to elect a Successor to *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, 117.

The INDEX.

Remana (Princess) second Daughter to *Cha-Reffine-Frola*. Her Male Heirs called to the Succession of her Father's hereditary Dominions, to the Prejudice of her eldest Sister *Nagar's* Daughters, 76. Married Prince *Salcher*. Her Death and Person. The Cause of her Death. The Advantage *Nagar* reaps from it, 209, 210.

Retima, the Wife of *Usbeck*, a *Persian* Lord, is designed for the Rank of a Favourite. Upon what Terms. Keeps faithfully the remarkable Treaty made with her by some Persons at Court. Is sincerely devoted to *Cha-Sepbi*. Her Age, Person, and Character, 53, &c. Laments the Death of her Sister *Zachi* from her Heart, 54. Follows the *Sopbi* every where, 55. Her Employment in the Mysteries solemnized in the little Recesses of the Palace of *Ispahan*. *Ibid*. Is out of Favour; for what Reason. Her Grief. Her serious Reflections, and exemplary Conduct. The Presents made her by the *Sopbi*. Her Debts how paid, 162, &c.

Rezza, one of *Cha-Baskan's* Generals; wants Capacity, 131.

Rhedi is put by *Ismael-Beg* at the Head of the Finances in the room of *Mahamet*. His Extraction, first Employment, Age and Character, 34. Is supported by *Ismael-Beg*, 45. Seconds *Scadeck's* Representations, 122. Argues strongly to prove that *Nessir* is to be assisted, 138. Pays his Court very dextrously to the *Sepbi*. Upon what Occasion, 172.

Ct De
Maurepa *Rica*, already in the Administration, under *Ali-Homajou's* Regency, 6. Has the Management of the Marine, and Foreign Trade of *Persia*. His Person, Character, Talents, Pleasures. Is charged with paying his Court to *Ismael-Beg* in a base manner, 34, 35. Is supported by the Princes *Jessing*, *Soliman* and *Sevagi*, 44.

Roxana (Princess) *Mirza-Haddi's* Mother, made a great Figure in the Reign of *Cia-Abas I*. Her Wit and Ambition. Her Projects to make one of her Daughters

The INDEX.

Daughters *Sultana* Queen. She imparts it to her Son, who suffers her to proceed. She pitches upon Princess *Sabeb*. Goes to her, but by whom attended. Her Design miscarries, and for what Reason, 20, &c. Encourages *Cosrou's* Party, 44. Her Hatred against the Princes *Soliman* and *Sevagi*, though her Brothers, 45. Her Death, 173.

Russia raises Armies in Conjunction with the Emperor *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, in order to cause *Mahmoud's* Son to be elected King of *Thibet*. Besieges *Chekour* in a Frontier Town, 59, &c. Had no other Emperor at the Death of *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, but a Child still at his Nurse's Breast. By whom it was governed at that Time, 110. A Revolution, by which *Selatiheb* is raised upon the Throne. The Cause and sudden Execution of that Project. Its Consequences. A Digression concerning the Power of the Empire of *Russia*, 156, &c. Enters into a War against the *Jalekeldarians*. The Success of it. A Peace concluded, upon what Conditions, 176. A Conspiracy against *Selatiheb* discovered. Part of the Conspirators are arrested and punished. The Empress charges the Queen of *Golconda's* Minister with being concerned in that Conspiracy, and demands Satisfaction. The Minister clears himself. The like Charge laid upon *Sydameck* the *Sophi's* Embassador. He is ordered to remove out of the Empire, 184, &c.

Rustan, the Eunuch, charged with the Detail of Business by *Ali-Homajou*. His Extraction, Person, Character, and Talents. His Conduct. By what Means he deserved *Ali-Homajou's* Favour. Is promoted to considerable Employments, 5, 6. *Cardinal*
Du Bois

Rutor-Cha, a *Persian* General designed to act with the Army under his Command as Necessity and Occasion shall require. Draws near one of the strongest Cities in *Feldran*. Follows *Cha-Sepbi* to the *Indus*, 194, 198.

The INDEX.

S.

Sabeb (Princess) *Roxana's* Daughter, designed by her Mother to marry *Cha-Sepbi*; her Person, Age, Character and Occupations; rejects her Mother's Proposal; a noble Speech she makes her, 20, &c.

Salcher (Prince) Brother-in-law to the Queen of *Golconda*, marches against *Gion-Kān* and the *Raja* of *Labor*; gives battle to the former in the Plain of *Kus-fola*; loses the Victory, and why, 132. Marches into the Kingdom of *Jenupar*, and appears before its Capital City, 135, &c. His Answer to *Scadeck's* Proposal; besieges *Jenupar* in Form; turns the Siege into a Blockade; resumes the Siege at the Queen of *Golconda's* Command; turns it again into a Blockade; raises it, and marches against *Azer*, who comes to relieve *Jenupar* at the Head of a numerous Army; follows that Army into *Visapouran*, and in the mean Time commands *Zieky* to invest *Jenupar* again, 136, &c. His Character, 145. Marches to the *Indus*, and threatens *Persia* with an Invasion, 182. Attempts to pass that River at two Places at once; the Success of that Attempt; retires after *Ibbi's* Arrival, and takes Winter-Quarters, 183. Crosses the *Indus* the next Year, without striking a Blow; what People think of that Passage; repasses it, to go to the Assistance of the Kingdom of *Jenupar*, invaded by *Gion-Kan*; does not arrive soon enough to prevent the taking of the Capital; receives a considerable Reinforcement from the *Raja* of *Labor*; takes again all that *Gion-Kan* had seized upon, and forces him to retire in Haste, 196—201. Had married *Remana*, Sister to the Queen of *Golconda*, 209.

Samarcande, the capital City of *Zagatbay*; *Chekeur* takes Sanctuary there after his unfortunate Expedition to *Thibet*, 64.

Sambal (the Province of) See *Gion-Kan* and *Selim-Kan*.

See.

The INDEX.

- Scadeck*, his Person, Employments, Talents, and Defect ; what Opinion People have of him ; his younger Brother's Character ; *Scadeck* communicates a grand Scheme to *Ismael-Beg* ; what it was, and how to be executed, 117, &c. He is appointed Ambassador from the *Sophi* to *Amadabat*, and honoured with the great *Calaat* ; his Instructions ; the Sumptuousness of his Embassy, and his prodigious Expence ; the little Satisfaction he has at his Departure ; his unsuccessful Representations ; with what Views he visits several *Rajas*, and other Princes, and the Advantage he makes of those Visits ; goes to *Cha-Baskan* ; what he does with him ; goes to *Gion-Kan* ; how he is received by him ; the Result of their Interview ; goes to *Amadabat*, 121, &c. Commands the *Persian* Army under *Cha-Baskan*, 126. *Nessir* is put in his stead, for what Reason, 127. Suffers himself to be imposed upon by *Gion-Kan* ; is suspected of advising a bad Disposition in the Army, 133, 134. Shuts himself up at *Jenupar*, with *Nessir* ; a Proposition he makes to *Salcher* accepted in Part ; the Siege is laid ; he is again besieged after *Nessir's* Retreat ; the Scheme he forms to get out of the Town ; it succeeds ; he is attacked in his March ; his Retreat commended ; he goes back to Court, and retires to a Country-Seat of his ; the Reason of it, 140, &c. Comes into Favour again, and commands an Army, 194. His Misfortune on the Borders of the Principality of *Cabul* ; Reflexions upon it ; and what is said of it, 210, &c.
- Echerazada* (Princess) Mother to *Anais* ; her Proceedings for her Daughter's Marriage, 207.
- Schiras*, a City in *Persia*, where the Ambassadors of the Powers of *Asia* meet to conclude a Peace, 36.
- Secandra*, a City in the Principality of *Delly*. See *Kazac*.
- Segedin* succeeds *Bedreddin* in the Command of the *Chinese* on the *Ganges* ; performs nothing, and why, 153. Receives Supplies from the King of *Cochinchina* ;

The INDEX.

- China* ; is joined by that Prince in Person ; no great Progress made notwithstanding that Junction, 174.
- Seif*, one of the *Persian* Generals on the *Ganges*, goes to release *Ibbi* on the *Indus* ; agrees well with *Sujah*, and yet they make no great Progress ; why ? 67, &c. Receives the great *Calaat*, 71. Refuses to command the Army in *Feldran*, 159. Commands again on the *Indus*, 194. Suffers Prince *Salcher* to pass that River, and is obliged to retire in Haste, 196.
- Selatibeb*, Empress Dowager of *China*, dies ; her Age ; was the Widow of *Semein I*, and *Ali-Homajou's* Daughter, 160.
- Selatibeb*, Empress of *Russia*, *Sa Russia*, 190.
- Selim*, the *Mebter*, is the Cause of *Mirza-Haddi's* Banishment ; his Character ; whom he employs to ruin that Prince, 19.
- Selim-Kan*, Son of *Mahmoud* King of *Thibet*, and *Raja* of *Labor*, succeeds his Father ; sets up for the Crown of *Thibet* ; is proclaimed by a *Thibetian* Lord, though *Chekour* was already elected, 59—61. At the Conclusion of the Peace acknowledges *Chekour* as King of *Thibet*, who abdicates nevertheless, and *Selim-Kan* is owned King of that Country, 74, 75. Enters into an Alliance with *Cha-Baskan*, *Cha-Sepbi*, and *Gion-Kan*, against the Queen of *Golconda* ; is the sixth *Raja* ; his Character, 103, &c. Separates his Troops from those of *Gion-Kan*, and joins with the *Persians*, 132. Accedes to the Treaty concluded between *Nagar* and *Gion-Kan*, and withdraws his Troops, 133. Declares for *Nagar*, and sends a considerable Reinforcement to Prince *Salcher*, 201.
- Semein I*, Emperor of *China* by his Father's Abdication, does not reign an whole Year ; married *Selatibeb* *Ali-Homajou's* Daughter, 160.
- Semir*, a *Mogolian* General on the *Ganges*, engages in Battle, and is killed, 71.
- Sepbir-Mirza*, Son of *Cha-Abas I*, and his presumptive Heir ; his Character ; is struck by *Giafer*, 14.
- Seri-

The INDEX.

Serizada (Princess) *Mirza-Haddi's* Widow; her Death; at what Age; her Character, 126.

Sevagi (Prince) Son of *Cha-Abas I.*, and Brother to *Soliman*; his Elogy, and what opinion people have of him, 27, &c. Supports *Rica* and *Ibrahim*, 44. Is in Love with *Zelida*, the Widow of a *Persian* Lord, and does not marry her till after *Ali-Homajou's* Death, and why? his Love for her; since his Marriage he passes the greatest Part of the year at a fine Country-seat in the Neighbourhood of *Ispahani*; a short Description of that Seat; his Magnificence and Generosity; he receives the *Sophy* there every year during twelve Years successively, 48, &c. His secret Conversations with *Cha-Sepbi*, 51. Is seldom admitted into the little Recesses of the Palace of *Ispahan*, and why? 56. Qualifications necessary in a Minister, and which he is possessed of, 79. Refuses a long while to take in hand the Helm of the State, and why? consents to it at last; falls sick soon after, and dies; a remarkable Circumstance of his Sickness, 80, &c.

Sevagi (the young Prince) the only Son of *Sevagi* and *Zelida*; is very dear to them; on what Account, 48; &c. The Survivorship of his Father's Employments procured to him, 51. Receives noble Instructions from his dying Father, 81. All his Father's Employments are bestowed upon him, 83. Makes his first Campaign, the Reputation he acquires; distinguishes himself in the Battle fought on the Banks of the River *Emni*, 160, 180. A Project to restore to him all his Father's Privileges; the Occasion of that Project, the Difficulties attending the Execution of it; he marries the Princess *Anais*, 205, 207.

Sizoken, a *Mogolian* General, succeeds *Semir*, and cannot retrieve the Affairs of the Empire; the Battle of *Orixia*, in which the *Mogolians* abandon the Field 72.

Soliman (Prince) Son of *Cha-Abas I.*, and Brother to *Sevagi*, is appointed to govern the State during *Cha-Sepbi's* Minority, 2. That Choice does not take Place;

J. of Maine

The INDEX.

Place ; and for what Reason, 3, &c. He is banished, 4. His Character, 27. Supports *Rica*, and *Ibrahim*, 44. His two Sons distinguish themselves in the Action on the Banks of the River *Emni*, 180. *Soulacki*, a *Chinese* General, succeeds to *Yerid* under *Segeddin* ; his Expeditions ; stands upon *Punctilios*, 154, 155.

Sujah, a *Persian* Lieutenant-General, takes upon him jointly with *Ibbi*, the Command of the Army after *Boulaki's* Death ; they continue the Siege begun by that General, and take the Town ; *Suja's* Character, and his Ability in War, 66. He does not agree with *Ibbi* ; *Seif* is associated with him, and agrees better ; and yet they make no Progress, and why ? 67, &c. He receives the great *Calaat*, 71.

Sultana Queen (the) Daughter to *Chekour*, marries *Cha-Sephi*, 25. She is older than him ; her Person and Character ; has no Credit, 25, 26.

Sydameck, Ambassador from *Persia* at the Court of *Russia*, at the Revolution in behalf of *Selatibeb* ; his Person ; his Credit at that Court ; the Advantage he reaps from it, 157. Is sent a Second Time into *Russia* with the same Character, and with what Views ; is charged with Projects contrary to the Tranquillity of that Empire, and commanded to depart ; Reflexions on that Charge, and on the Usage he met with, 185, &c.

T.

Tachmene, *Zelida's* second Son by her first Husband, commands by Sea ; his Age, Character and Elogy ; his Death ; what is said of him after it ; leaves no Children, 148, &c.

Tamel succeeds to *Cofrou* in the Office of first Secretary of State only ; his Extraction, Talents, Person, and Character ; his hatred against a Man, who had enjoyed *Cofrou's* Confidence ; the Effects of that Hatred hurt his Reputation, 78, &c. He is removed. What People think of it, 192.

Tatta

The INDEX.

Tatta (the Principality of). yeilded to *Chekour*, and after his Death to *Persia* in full Sovereignty, 74. Invaded by a *Golcondian* General, and the Consequences of that Invasion, 184.

Taxis, eldest Brother to *Neamed*, is appointed first Secretary of State, upon *Couton-Cba's* Refusal. His Genius, Talents, and Character, 193.

Tibet (the Kingdom of) its Situation, Division, Constitutions, and Customs when a King is to be elected, 57. &c. *Mahmoud's* Election and Deprivation. *Chekour's* Election and Deprivation, 58. *Chekour* elected again, at the same Time that *Mahmoud* is elected. A War between the two Competitors. The Event of it, *ibid.* At the Conclusion of the Peace, *Mahmoud* is acknowledged King, and *Chekour* abdicates, 64, 75.

Treaty of Peace between *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, *Cha-Sephi* and his Allies. The Conditions of the Treaty, and Reflections upon it, 75, &c.

Tunquin (the Republick of) rich and powerful, though not extensive. Its Government. Sides with no Party after *Cha-Ressinc-Frola's* Death, 116.

V. and U.

Visapour (the *Raja* of) the fifth in Rank. See *Cba-Bascan Calenea*.

Usbeck, a *Persian* Lord, and *Retima's* Husband, 53.

Usbecks (the) of *Zagathay* lose their King; how old he was; his Temper; was the second King of that Kingdom; when, and upon what Occasion it was erected into a Kingdom; that Prince's Character, 84. He leaves his Dominions to his Son *Gion-Kan*, 85.

W.

War of *Persia* against *China*, under *Ali-Homajou*; the Motive of it; it continues but little, 12. Between the

The INDEX.

the King of *Jalekeldar*, and *Mahmoud* King of *Thibet*; the latter is unthroned, and *Chekour* put in his stead, 58. Between *Mahmoud* and *Chekour*; the latter loses his Crown, 59. To maintain *Chekour*, again elected King of *Thibet* after *Mahmoud's* Death, 60. Between *Cha-Ressinc-Frola*, Emperor of *Mogul* on one Side, and the Emperor of *China*, the *Sophi*, and the King of *Necbal* on the other Side; the Success of that War, 65. Between the Emperors of *China* and *Japan*, and the true Motive of it, 87, &c. Between *Gion-Kan* and the Queen of *Golconda*; upon what Occasion, 96, &c. Of *Persia*, *China*, and *Cochinchina*, against the Queen of *Golconda* and her Allies, in Behalf of *Cha-Baskan*; the Events of that War, 125—188. Of *Russia* against the *Jalekeldarians*, disadvantageous to the latter, 176.

X.

Xura, one of the Queen of *Golconda's* Generals, invades *Visapouran*, takes the Capital, and subdues the whole Country, 131.

Y.

Yerid, a *Chinese* General under *Negeddin*, re-called, why, 154.

Z.

Zachi, one of *Retima's* Sisters, suspected of a secret Conversation with *Cha-Sepbi*; was lately married to a young Lord; her Person; Character, and Designs; she dies in Child-bed, 54, &c.

Zelida (Princess) makes a great Figure at the Court of *Persia*, 45, &c. Her Friendship for *Fatmé*; she falls out with her; the Reasons of it; *Zelida's* blind Confidence in *Nargum*; the Prejudice she receives from it; her Descent, Character, and Person; is beloved

The INDEX.

- beloved by Prince *Sevagi*, and marries him; the happy Consequences of that Union; her tender Uneasiness for her only Son, 46, &c. Her living when a Widow in too great a Retirement, hurts her Son's Interest, and is partly the Cause why the *Sopbi* leaves off going to *Sevagi*'s Seat, 48. Has the Art to divert the *Sopbi*; her secret Conversations with that Prince; the Use she makes of it in Favour of *Sevagi*, and of *Nadir*, one of her Sons by her first Husband, 51. Makes but seldom one at the Parties in the little Recesses of the Palace at *Ispahan*, and why, 56. Her Grief at the Death of Prince *Sevagi* her Husband, 82. Her Affliction at the Death of *Techmane*, 150. Her Uneasiness at the Departure of her Son *Sevagi* for his first Campaign, 160.
- Zelim*, being returned from his Embassy at the Court of *Corea*, is sent by *Cha-Sepbi* to *Cha-Baskan* Emperor of *Mogul*; upon what Account; his Talents, Reputation, Character, and Person, 186. Is put at the Head of Foreign Affairs under *Ibbi*, 192.
- Zenska*, a *Persian* Officer, degraded; upon what Account; he is restored; a noble Instance of *Cha-Sepbi*'s Justice and Good-nature, 208.
- Zepbis* (Princess) finds Means to marry her Daughter to *Mirgi-Mola*, 207.
- Zieky*, a *Golcondian* General, besieges *Jenupar* again, and takes it, 141, &c.
- Zilamira*, the supposed Mistress of *Kalife-Sultan*; her Profession, Reputation, and Genius; her Death, 129.
- Zingis*, a *Persian* Lord, Husband to *Euxica*, 164.
- Zulima* goes with *Roxana* to *Sahab*; her Person and Character, 22. *Mlle de Prie*.

F I N I S.



Marshal Villars Gemisch
Marshal Broglie Mepir
Marshal de Coigny Scif
M. Amelot Jamel
Prussians Zaguthay
K of Prussia Lion Kain
England Japan
George 2. Chanaras Kain
Hungary Golonda
Marshal Ballepale Sadech
Count Jone Kaliff Sultan
Mad Le Couvreur Zelamine
Bros Kinner Bamber Kain
Jf de Chateauroux Opria
M. de la Chetardie Sydameuk
Card. de Teneins Bruggain
Merguis D'Argenson Thais

M
C
en
La
K
H
M
M
M
an
A
S
Ja
S
C
D
V
V
C
O
H
H
H
S
H
C

M. orie Khedi
Charvochin Cosron
amedeus D. of Savoy Kotin
Sardine Nechal
Kz of Sardine Korfule
Marguiss D'antin Nadir
M^e de Mailli Kihime
M. de Mailli Urbech
M^e de Vintimille Zetiri her father
Augustus Kz of Poland Mahmood
Poland Thibet
Stanislaus Chekar
Islehelda
Sweden Islehelda
Saxony Lahor
Spain Cherie
Germany Mogol
Kz of Sardine Nechal
Empire Mogol
C^{te} de Plelo Gnumar
Kongsbergk Tamarande
Rhine Indus
D. of Newick Bramlatir
M. D'Asfeld Injak
M. de Noailles Ibbi
The Po Ganges
p^r Eugene Evoneg
Charles vi. cha Refrime Trola

+

